



Treo™ 700wx
SMARTPHONE

User Guide

Intellectual property notices

© 2007-2008 Palm, Inc. All rights reserved. Trademark, copyright, patent, and other intellectual property notices are set forth on page ii within *Quick Reference*, which can be found in your smartphone package.

Disclaimer and limitation of liability

Palm, Inc. and its suppliers assume no responsibility for any damage or loss resulting from the use of this guide. Palm, Inc. and its suppliers assume no responsibility for any loss or claims by third parties that may arise through the use of this software. Palm, Inc. and its suppliers assume no responsibility for any damage or loss caused by deletion of data as a result of malfunction, dead battery, or repairs. Be sure to make backup copies of all important data on other media to protect against data loss.

Palm Take Back and Recycling Program



This symbol indicates that Palm products should be recycled and not be disposed of in unsorted municipal waste. Palm products should be sent to a facility that properly recycles electrical and electronic equipment. For information on environmental programs visit: palm.com/environment

As part of Palm's corporate commitment to be a good steward of the environment, we strive to use environmentally friendly materials, reduce waste, and develop the highest standards in electronics recycling. Our recycling program keeps Palm handheld devices, smartphones, and mobile companions out of landfills through evaluation and disposition for reuse and recycling.

Palm customers may participate in the recycling program free of charge. Visit palm.com/recycle or in the US call 877-869-7256 for additional details and information about how you can help reduce electronic waste.

v 2.0

Contents

Chapter 1: Welcome	7
Your new Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone	9
What's in the box?	9
What do I need to get started?	11
Where can I learn more?	11
Chapter 2: Setting up	13
Palm Treo 700wx smartphone overview	15
Installing the battery	18
Charging the battery	19
Making your first call	22
Setting up synchronization	24
Chapter 3: Moving around on your smartphone	25
Navigating around the screen	27
Using the keyboard	34
Opening and closing applications	38
Using your Today screen	39
Chapter 4: Your phone	41
Turning your smartphone on/off	43
Making calls from the Today screen	44
Other ways of making calls	49
Receiving calls	50
Using voicemail	51
What can I do during a call?	52
Defining speed-dial buttons	57
Using a phone headset	60

Customizing phone settings	64
What are all those icons?	72
Chapter 5: Synchronizing information	77
Synchronization overview	79
How do I synchronize?	79
What can I synchronize?	80
Setting up your computer for synchronization	83
Synchronizing using the sync cable	89
Setting up wireless synchronization	90
Other ways to synchronize	94
Setting synchronization options	96
Chapter 6: Your email	99
Setting up email	101
Sending and receiving messages	113
Working with email messages	118
Customizing your email settings	123
Working with meeting invitations	130
Sending email messages from within another application	131
Chapter 7: Your text and multimedia messages	133
Sending and receiving text and multimedia messages	135
Setting message preferences	142
Chapter 8: Your connections to the web and wireless devices	145
Browsing the web	147
Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology	154
Using your device as a wireless modem	158

Chapter 9: Your photos, videos, and music	161
Synchronizing your media files	163
Camera	164
Pictures & Videos	170
Windows Media Player Mobile	174
Chapter 10: Your personal information organizer	181
Contacts	183
Calendar	186
Tasks	192
Notes	195
Chapter 11: Your Microsoft Office and other document tools	199
Synchronizing your Microsoft Office files	201
Word Mobile	203
PowerPoint Mobile	209
Excel Mobile	210
PDF Viewer	222
Chapter 12: Your application and info management tools	225
Finding information	227
Installing applications	229
Removing applications	232
Sharing information	233
Beaming information	233
Using expansion cards	235
Calculator	240
Chapter 13: Your personal settings	243
Today screen settings	245
System sound settings	246

Display and appearance settings	248
Application settings	251
Locking your smartphone and info	256
System settings	260
Connection settings	266
Submitting usage information to Microsoft	268
Chapter 14: Troubleshooting	271
Transferring info from another device	273
Reinstalling the desktop software	273
Resetting your smartphone	274
Performance	277
Screen	278
Network connection	279
Synchronization: Overview	282
Synchronization: Desktop sync software	283
Synchronization: Exchange ActiveSync (wireless synchronization)	288
Email	289
Web	292
Camera	293
Third-party applications	294
Making room on your smartphone	295
Voice quality	296
Terms	297
Important safety and legal information	303
Specifications	311
Index	315



Welcome

Congratulations on the purchase of your Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone.

Benefits

- Make and receive phone calls
- Manage your contacts, calendar, and task list
- Receive and send corporate and personal email messages
- Browse the web
- Use a Bluetooth® headset (sold separately) for hands-free operation

In this chapter

Your new Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone	9
What's in the box?	9
What do I need to get started?	11
Where can I learn more?	11

Your new Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone

In one compact and indispensable device, you now have all of the following:

- An advanced wireless smartphone
- A Windows Mobile® organizer with portable expansion capability (MultiMediaCard/SD/SDIO expansion cards)
- High-speed data with NationalAccess (1xRTT) and BroadbandAccess (EVDO) support
- A 1.3 megapixel digital camera
- Mobile email
- Text and multimedia messaging
- Windows Media® Player Mobile
- Microsoft® Office Mobile suite

This guide helps you quickly set up and learn to use your smartphone.

TIP LOOK HERE: Don't miss the helpful tips and cross-references given in these boxes.

NOTE Phone and text messaging services require a service contract with Verizon Wireless. Web, email, and messaging services require a service contract and high-speed data service from Verizon Wireless. Data speeds vary based on network availability.

What's in the box?

All of the following items should be in the smartphone box:

Hardware

- Treo 700wx smartphone
- Rechargeable battery
- AC charger
- USB sync cable
- Stereo headset
- Screen protector

TIP Visit palm.com to purchase a replacement screen protector if the original one becomes scratched or worn.

Documentation and software

- *Read This First* setup poster
- *Quick Reference* (The original guide that came with your smartphone. A new *Quick Reference*, which reflects the changes provided when you upgraded your smartphone to Windows Mobile 6 Professional, is available for download from palm.com/verizon700wxupdate.)
- Windows Mobile Getting Started CD, which includes the following:
 - Link to Microsoft Office Outlook® software download
 - Desktop synchronization software (ActiveSync® desktop software for Windows XP, Windows Mobile Device Center for Windows Vista)
- Windows Media® Player 10
- Additional software for your smartphone
- *User Guide* (The original guide that came with your smartphone. The *User Guide* you are reading has been updated to reflect the changes provided when you upgraded your smartphone to Windows Mobile 6 Professional.)
- Palm warranty
- End User License Agreement

NOTE When you upgrade your smartphone to Windows Mobile 6 Professional, you need version 4.5 of ActiveSync desktop software for a Windows XP computer. This version is not included on the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD. Instead, go to palm.com/us/support/treo/treo700wxverizon/ and follow the link to install ActiveSync 4.5.

NOTE To install Windows Media Player and other software from the Getting Started CD, insert the CD into your computer's CD drive, select **Add new programs to my desktop PC**, and follow the onscreen prompts.

What do I need to get started?



As you work through the instructions in this guide, you need all the items that came in the smartphone box (see [What's in the box?](#)), as well as the following:

- An activated wireless account from Verizon Wireless; if you want to use email, web browsing, or multimedia messaging, your account must also include a data service plan
- A location with wireless coverage for your smartphone
- An electrical outlet for recharging the smartphone battery
- A computer on which you can install desktop synchronization software and synchronize your smartphone


For more information about synchronization, see [Synchronizing information](#).

Where can I learn more?

For a quick introduction

Quick Tour: The Quick Tour introduces you to many of your Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone's features. It is already installed on your smartphone, and you can open it anytime. Press **Start** , select **Programs**, and then select **Quick Tour** .

While using your smartphone

On-device Help: Your smartphone includes on-device help that is specially formatted for your smartphone screen. To view the on-device help, press **Start**  and select **Help**.

Online support from Palm: For up-to-date downloads, troubleshooting, and support information, go to palm.com/us/support/treo/treo700wxverizon/.

If you need more information

Books: Many books on Windows Mobile® devices are available in local or online book retailers (look in the computers section).

Verizon Wireless customer service: For questions about your mobile account or network features, contact Verizon Wireless customer service or visit verizonwireless.com for the latest information and help.



Setting up

You're about to discover the many ways your Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone can help you better manage your life and have fun too.

As you become more familiar with your smartphone, you can personalize the settings and add applications to make it uniquely yours. But first, follow these few easy steps to set up your smartphone and get it running.

Benefits

- Know where your smartphone controls are located
- Start using your smartphone right away

In this chapter

Palm Treo 700wx smartphone overview	15
Installing the battery	18
Charging the battery.	19
Making your first call	22
Setting up synchronization	24

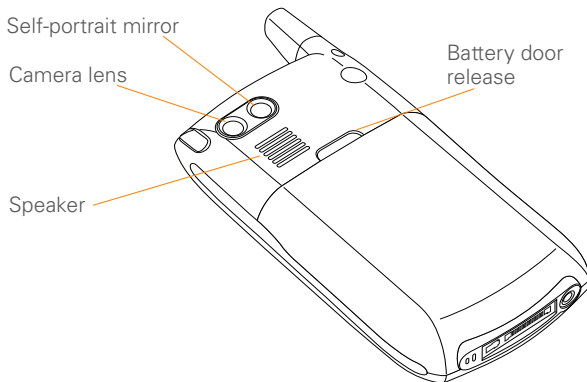
Palm Treo 700wx smartphone overview

Front view

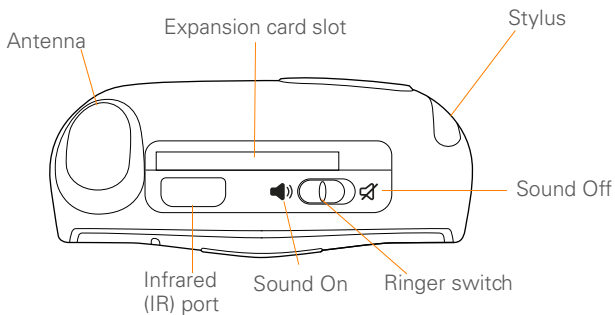


TIP Be careful not to scratch or crush your smartphone screen. Do not store it in a place where other items might damage it. For a variety of useful accessories, including carrying cases that protect the screen, visit palm.com/mytreo700wxVerizon.

DID YOU KNOW? By default, pressing and holding the Side button opens the Windows Media® Player Mobile application (see [Windows Media Player Mobile](#)). You can change the function of the Side button (see [Reassigning buttons](#)).

Back view

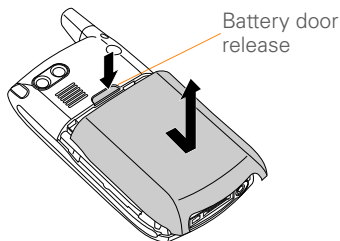
IMPORTANT The smartphone speaker includes a large magnet, so be sure not to store your smartphone near credit cards or other items that could be demagnetized.

Top view

DID YOU KNOW? The Ringer switch silences all sounds, including music, at once; you don't need to hunt for "off" or "mute" settings in individual applications.

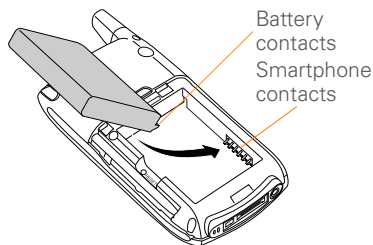
Installing the battery

- 1 Press and hold the **battery door release**, while you slide the **battery door** off your smartphone.



- 2 Align the battery contacts with the smartphone contacts inside the battery compartment.
- 3 Insert the **battery** into the compartment at a 45-degree angle, and then press it into place.

TIP If you ever need to remove the battery, it is easier to do so if you first remove the stylus.



- 4 Slide the **battery door** back onto the smartphone until it clicks into place.
- 5 Your smartphone screen turns on. Wait a moment for the progress bar to fill and the Windows Mobile® screen to appear.
- 6 Follow the onscreen instructions to finish the installation.

TIP If your smartphone does not turn on after you insert the battery, charge the battery (see [Charging the battery](#)). If the smartphone still doesn't start, perform a soft reset (see [Performing a soft reset](#)).

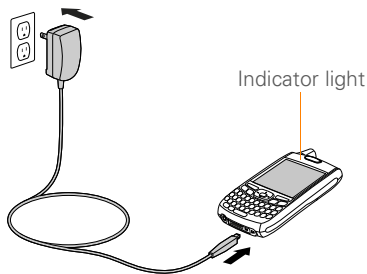
TIP You can buy an extra battery as a spare for long plane trips or periods of heavy data use. Be sure to use batteries from Palm only. For more information on battery usage, see [CTIA Battery Handling Guidelines](#).

Charging the battery

Before using your smartphone, you need to charge the battery. For tips on maximizing the life of your smartphone battery, see [Maximizing battery life](#).

IMPORTANT Charge the battery for 3.5 hours, or until the indicator light is solid green.

- 1 Plug the **AC charger** into a wall outlet. If necessary, connect an adapter.
- 2 With the arrow on the connector facing up (toward your smartphone screen), connect the **AC charger cable** to the bottom of your smartphone.



- 3 Check the indicator light to confirm that your smartphone is being charged.
 - Solid red indicates that your smartphone is charging.
 - Solid green indicates that your smartphone is fully charged.

TIP If the indicator light does not turn on when you connect your smartphone to the AC charger, double-check the cable connection and the electrical outlet to which it is connected.

DID YOU KNOW? If the battery is low, the indicator light flashes red.

When your smartphone is on (see [Turning your smartphone on/off](#)), the onscreen battery icon displays the charging status:



A solid lightning bolt indicates that the battery is connected to a wall outlet and is being charged.



A shaded lightning bolt indicates that the battery is connected to a wall outlet and is fully charged.



A partial battery without a lightning bolt indicates that the battery is not connected to a wall outlet and that it has some power.



An exclamation point (!) indicates that the battery needs to be charged immediately.



Battery icon

DID YOU KNOW? Tapping the battery icon opens a window showing a percentage level of charge left in the battery.


DID YOU KNOW? If your battery ever becomes fully drained, your info remains safely stored on your smartphone. Recharge the battery to access your info.

DID YOU KNOW? You can also charge your smartphone from your computer by connecting them with the sync cable.

Maximizing battery life

Battery life depends on how you use your smartphone. You can maximize battery life by following some easy guidelines:

- Charge your smartphone whenever you're at your desk, or charge it overnight each day. The battery in your smartphone has a much longer useful life if you charge it frequently instead of waiting until it's fully drained.
- If you spend a lot of time using the camera, games, media players (including listening to music with wireless headphones using the built-in Bluetooth® wireless technology), or other applications, keep an eye on the battery icon and charge when necessary.
- Wireless features (phone, email, messaging, and web) generally consume more power than the organizer features. If you don't plan to use the wireless features on your

smartphone for a while, turn off your wireless services (see [Turning wireless services on/off](#)). You can forward calls to a different number or let all calls be picked up by voicemail (see [Forwarding calls](#)). To see if your wireless services are on, tap the **phone-off**  icon and select **Wireless Manager**.




DID YOU KNOW? You can also see if your wireless services are on by pressing **Menu** (right softkey) and selecting **Wireless Manager**.


- If you are synchronizing email and other information directly with your corporate Exchange server using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync®, set the synchronization interval to a maximum of every 15 minutes during peak times and every hour (or turned off completely) during non-peak times (see [Setting the synchronization schedule](#)).
- Turn off the Bluetooth feature when you do not need to make a Bluetooth connection (see [Entering basic Bluetooth settings](#)).
- Turn the voice command feature off (see [Setting up voice commands](#)).
- As with any mobile phone, if you are in an area with no wireless coverage, your smartphone searches for a signal, which consumes power. If you cannot move to an area of better coverage, temporarily turn off your phone (see [Turning your phone off](#)).
- Turn down the screen brightness (see [Adjusting the brightness](#)).
- Set your screen to turn off automatically after a shorter period of inactivity (see [Optimizing power settings](#)).
- Turn off the option to receive beamed information (see [Beaming an entry or file](#)).
- Keep your battery away from direct sunlight and other sources of heat. Temperatures over 120 degrees Fahrenheit (50 degrees Celsius) can permanently reduce the capacity and life span of any lithium-ion battery.

Making your first call

- 1 Press **Phone/Send**  to display your Today screen.



- 2 If prompted, press **Center**  on the **5-way navigator**  to turn off Keyguard (see [Locking your keyboard \(Keyguard\)](#) for more info).
- 3 If you have not activated your phone, follow these steps to do so:
 - Use the keyboard to enter ***228** (these numbers appear on the **ZRRK** letter keys).
 - Press **Phone/Send**  to dial.


- Follow the voice prompts to activate your phone. A service provisioning message appears.
- Wait a few minutes until you see the Programming Successful! message, and then press **Dismiss**  (left softkey).

- 4 Use the keyboard to enter the number you want to call.



TIP The Dial Lookup list might appear while you are dialing a number. Continue entering numbers to make the call. For more info on the Dial Lookup list, see [Dialing by contact name](#).

- 5 Press **Phone/Send**  to dial.



- 6 When your call is complete, press **Power/End**  to end the call.

Adjusting call volume

While a call is in progress, press the **Volume** button on the side of your smartphone to adjust the call volume.

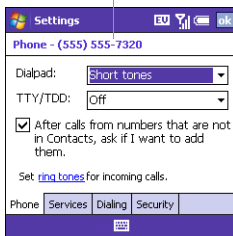


What's my number?

- 1 Make sure your phone is on (see [Turning your phone on](#)).
- 2 If you do not see your Today screen, press **Phone/Send** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey).
- 4 Select **Preferences > Phone Settings**.

- 5 On the Phone tab, look for your phone number below the title bar.

Look here for your phone number



- 6 Press **OK** .

TIP If your phone number doesn't appear on the Phone Settings screen, press **OK**, and then press and hold **Power/End** to turn your phone off. Press and hold **Power/End** again to turn your phone back on. Repeat steps 1–6. If your phone number still doesn't appear, your phone has not been activated. Turn your phone off, wait a few hours, and then turn on your phone and repeat these steps. If your phone number still does not appear, contact Verizon Wireless for assistance.

Setting up synchronization

Once you've finished setting up your smartphone, we recommend that you set up a synchronization method to get the most out of your smartphone. When you synchronize your smartphone, information that has been entered or updated in one place—your smartphone, your computer, or your corporate server—is automatically updated in the other (see [Synchronizing information](#)).



Moving around on your smartphone

Have you ever been to a new city and felt a bit lost until you figured out the streets? Learning to move around on your Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone is similar. Most applications that work on your smartphone use the same set of controls. So once you learn how to use these controls, you'll be traveling all over town and you won't even need a map.

Benefits







- Quickly move around and complete tasks in applications using one thumb on the 5-way navigator
- Access extra features with menus
- Find and open applications quickly

In this chapter

Navigating around the screen	27
Using the keyboard	34
Opening and closing applications.	38
Using your Today screen	39

Navigating around the screen

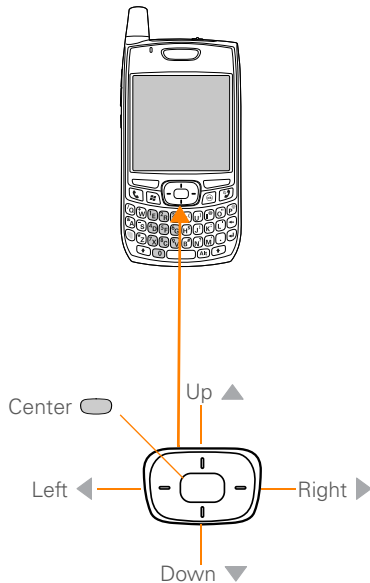
To move around the smartphone screen, you can use the 5-way navigator or you can tap items on the screen with the stylus. As you become familiar with your smartphone, you'll find your own favorite way to scroll, highlight, and select items.

The 5-way  includes the **Right** , **Left** , **Up** , **Down**  and **Center**  buttons.

TIP Some third-party applications may not work with the 5-way navigator, and you must use the stylus instead.



DID YOU KNOW? Custom navigation features are available when you browse the web using Internet Explorer (see [Viewing a web page](#)).

TIP The arrow icons that indicate directions on the 5-way are different from the onscreen scroll arrows and the arrows that indicate that a list is available (see [Selecting options in a list](#)).




Scrolling through screens

As on a computer, on your smartphone you scroll to move from field to field or page to page, or in some cases to highlight an item or option in a list. There are several methods of scrolling:

- On the 5-way , press **Right** ▶, **Left** ◀, **Up** ▲, or **Down** ▼ to move to the next field, button, or action in that direction.
- Press and hold **Option**  while pressing **Up** ▲ or **Down** ▼ to scroll one screen at a time. These keys work just like the Page Up and Page Down keys on your computer keyboard.

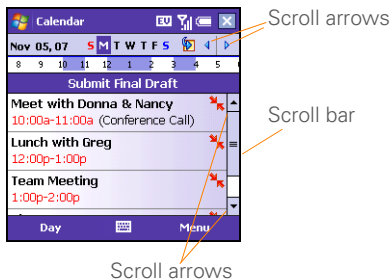
TIP Can't find the Option key? See [Using the keyboard](#).

- Press and hold **Option**  while pressing **Left** ◀ or **Right** ▶ to jump to the top or bottom of the current document or entry.

TIP When you are using applications such as Messaging, Internet Explorer Mobile, and Word Mobile, press and hold **Option** while pressing **Left** or **Right** on the 5-way to automatically go to the top and bottom of a screen.

- When viewing a screen with tabs, such as when adding a contact, press **Down** ▼ to scroll to the tabs, and then press **Left** ◀ or **Right** ▶ to move between tabs.
- When inside a text field, press **Right** ▶ or **Left** ◀ to move to the next character, and press **Up** ▲ or **Down** ▼ to move between lines.
- When inside a list, press and hold **Up** ▲ or **Down** ▼ to scroll rapidly through the list.


- Tap an onscreen scroll arrow.



- Tap and drag the slider of an onscreen scroll bar.

Closing screens

To close the current screen and return to the previous screen, do either of the following:

- Press **OK** .
- Use the stylus to tap **ok** or **X** in the upper-right corner of the screen.

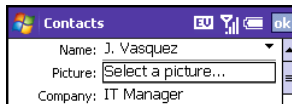
TIP These buttons are not accessible using the 5-way.

Highlighting and selecting items

On most screens, one item—a button, a list entry, or a check box—is highlighted by default. The highlight identifies which item is affected by your next action. Use the 5-way to move the highlight from one item to another before opening or selecting it.

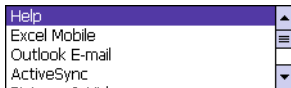
The highlight can take one of two forms, depending on what is highlighted:


Border: This rectangular border highlights items such as an onscreen button (for example, OK, Dismiss, or Hide), a check box, an option, or a web link.



Reverse type (light text on a dark background):

This highlights items such as a phone number, an email address, text, or an item in a list.



After highlighting an item with the 5-way, you can select (activate) it by pressing **Center**  or by tapping the item with the stylus.



TIP The best way to learn to use the 5-way is to experiment. Press the 5-way buttons, and as you do, follow the movement of the border around the screen. The behavior of the 5-way varies slightly in each application.

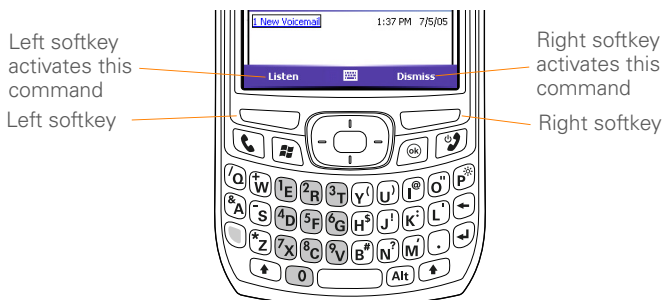
Highlighting text

You can use the stylus to highlight text on the screen. Tap and drag the stylus across the text you want to highlight. To highlight a word, double-tap it. To highlight a paragraph, triple-tap it.


TIP When text is highlighted, you can press **Backspace** to delete the highlighted text.

Using the softkeys

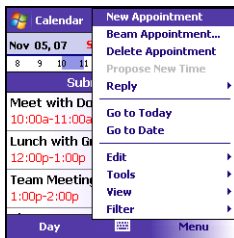
Because the left and right softkeys give you quick access to tasks that you can do on the current screen, the softkey items vary from application to application and from screen to screen. Look on the screen directly above the softkey to see the action that it takes in the current context. In some contexts, these keys may do nothing at all. In most cases the right softkey  opens the menu, and the left softkey  activates a specific command, such as New or Edit. Remember that softkey functions vary from screen to screen, so be sure to check the onscreen label before pressing the softkeys.











Selecting menu items

In many applications, a menu provides access to additional features. The menu is hidden until you press Menu  (right softkey). To get the most out of your smartphone, it's a good idea to familiarize yourself with the additional features available through the menu in various applications.

- 1 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) to display an application's menu.



- 2 Press **Up**  or **Down**  to highlight a menu item.

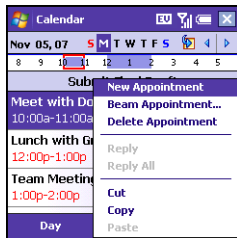
- 3 If an arrow appears to the right of a menu item, press **Center**  or **Right**  to display additional options for that item, and then press **Up**  or **Down**  to highlight a menu item. To return to the main menu without making a selection, press **Left** .
- 4 Press **Center**  to select the menu item, or press **Left**  or **Menu**  (right softkey) to close the menu and cancel your selection.






DID YOU KNOW? You can select most menu items by pressing a key on the keyboard. To quickly access a menu item, press **Menu** (right softkey) followed by the underlined letter in the menu item's name.

Selecting options in a shortcut menu

Most applications also provide access to context-sensitive shortcut menus—similar to the right-click menus on a computer. The shortcut menu options vary based on the highlighted selection.

- 1 Highlight the item whose shortcut menu you want to see.

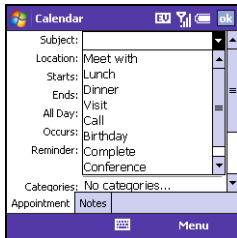
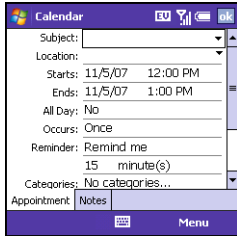


- 2 Press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu.
- 3 Press **Up**  or **Down**  to highlight a menu item.
- 4 Press **Center**  to select the menu item, or press **Left**  to cancel your selection.

TIP You can also tap and hold the stylus on an item to open the shortcut menu.






Selecting options in a list

Lists let you select from a range of options. You can identify whether a list is available when you select the field. If a rectangle appears around the field along with a downward-pointing arrow, a list is available. Lists are different from the menus described earlier in this section.




TIP When selecting fields you might not see the downward-pointing arrow until you press Center on the 5-way.

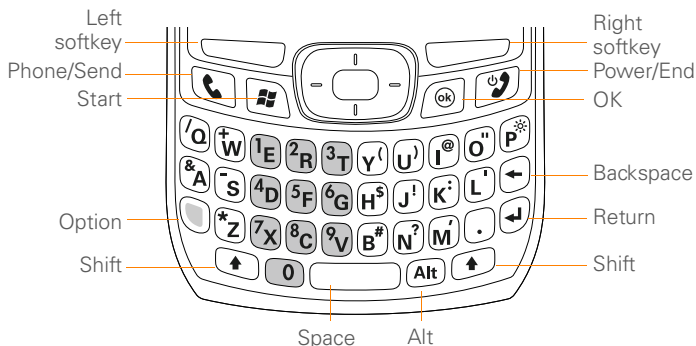
To select from a list, do any of the following:

- Use the **5-way**  to highlight the field, and then press **Center**  to display the items in the list. Press **Up**  or **Down**  to highlight the item you want, and then press **Center**  to make your selection.
- Use your stylus to tap the arrow, and then tap the item in the list.

DID YOU KNOW? In fields where you see a downward-pointing arrow but no rectangle, you must tap the arrow with the stylus to display the list.

- To exit the list and cancel your selection, press **Left** .

Using the keyboard



TIP When using the keyboard to type a message or a note, most people find it easiest to hold the smartphone with two hands and to use the tips of both thumbs to press the keys.

DID YOU KNOW? You can also use the onscreen keyboard to enter letters, numbers, and other characters in applications that support this feature. Tap the keyboard icon in the center at the bottom of any screen where it appears. After opening the keyboard, you can set various input options by tapping the arrow to the right of the keyboard icon.

Understanding the keyboard backlight










Your smartphone includes a keyboard backlight for low light conditions. The keyboard backlight turns on automatically when you turn on the screen. The backlight turns off automatically when the screen turns off or when you are on a call or playing music in the background for longer than the time specified in Backlight Settings. You can set different time intervals depending on whether the

smartphone is operating on battery power or is connected to an external power source. The backlight also turns off when an application's power-saving features turn it off.

TIP You can change the backlight shut-off interval. Press **Start** and select **Settings**. Select the **System** tab, and then select **Backlight**. Set the time interval on the Battery Power tab and on the External Power tab.

Entering lowercase and uppercase letters







By default, the first letter of each sentence or field is capitalized and the remaining text you enter is lowercase. To enter other uppercase letters, do one of the following:

- Press **Shift** ( or ) and then enter a letter. This symbol  appears at the bottom of the screen. You don't need to press and hold **Shift** while entering a letter.
- Press **Shift** ( or ) twice to turn on **Caps Lock**, and then enter a series of letters. When **Caps Lock** is on, this symbol  appears at the bottom of the screen: . To turn off **Caps Lock**, press **Shift** ( or ) again.

TIP You can turn off the first-letter capitalization setting (see [Setting input options](#)).

Entering numbers, punctuation, and symbols

Numbers, punctuation, and symbols appear above the letters on the keys. To enter these characters, do one of the following:

- Press **Option**  and then press the key of the desired character. This symbol  appears at the bottom of the screen. You don't need to hold **Option** while pressing the key.
- Press **Option**  twice to turn on **Option Lock**, and then press the desired keys to enter a series of characters. When **Option Lock** is on, this symbol  appears at the bottom of the screen: . To turn off **Option Lock**, press **Option**  again.

Entering passwords

You can't see your password as you enter it, so be careful. Be sure Caps Lock and Option Lock are not on unless you need them. For information on how to enter characters, see [Entering lowercase and uppercase letters](#) and [Entering numbers, punctuation, and symbols](#).

Entering other symbols and accented characters

You can enter symbols and accented characters that don't appear on the keys by using the alternate characters list.

- 1 Press **Alt** (⌘) to display the alternate character list.
- 2 Narrow the list by pressing the key that corresponds to the character you want. See the following table for a list of corresponding characters.

TIP The alternate characters are grouped according to their similarity to the corresponding key. For example, the alternate characters available for the e key are é, è, ê, and ê. If you press the wrong key, press **Backspace** to return to the full list of alternate characters. You can then press another key.

- 3 Press **Up** (▲) or **Down** (▼) to highlight the desired character.
- 4 Press **Center** (◀▶) to insert the character.

TIP Some symbols, such as an underscore, do not correspond to a letter key. To enter these symbols, press **Alt** by itself, and then select the symbol from the list.

Symbols and accented characters

Press Alt Alt and press...	to select...	Press Alt Alt and press...	to select...	Press Alt Alt and press...	to select...
a	á à â ã ä å æ	n	ñ	x or X	x □
A	Á Â Ã Ä Å Æ	N	Ñ	y	ý ŷ
b or B	ß	o	ó ò ô õ ö ø	Y	Ý Ÿ
c	ç ø ©	O	Ó Ò Ö Õ Œ Õ	0	°
C	Ç ø ©	p or P	¶	1	¹ ¼ ½
e	é è ê ë	r or R	®	2	²
E	É Ê Ë Ì	s	ß š	3	³ ¾
f or F	f	S	ß Š	!	¡
i	í î ï	t or T	™	\$	€ £ ¥ ¢
I	Í Î Ï	u	ú ù ü û	Option + K (;)	: :- (-;)
I or L	£	U	Ú Ù Û Ü	Option + N (?)	¿

Press Alt **Alt** by itself to select these characters:

: _ • % = ÷ ^ € £ ¥ ¢ \$ [] { } < > « » © ® ° ~ \ Ø μ |




Opening and closing applications

Opening applications

You can access all the applications on your smartphone through the Start menu.

- 1 Press **Start**  to open the Start menu.



- 2 Use the **5-way**  to highlight the application you want to use. To view additional applications, select **Programs**.
- 3 Press **Center**  to open the highlighted application.
- 4 (Optional) Press **OK**  to return to Programs and open another application.


The current application continues to run in the background.


TIP With the Start menu open, press the letter underlined in the application's name to open the app. For example, press **H** to open Help. Or, select the shortcut icons at the top of the Start menu to open recently used applications.

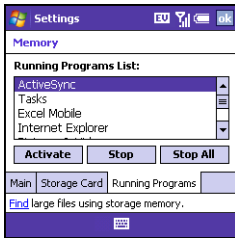
DID YOU KNOW? Another way to open apps is to press and hold **Option** and then press **Phone/Send, Start,** or **OK**. You can change which app a button combination opens (see [Reassigning buttons](#)).

Closing applications

You don't need to exit one application before you open another—you can have several applications open at once. In most cases, applications close automatically when available memory is low, but you can also close applications manually.

NOTE If you press **OK**  to leave an application, the current application continues running in the background. To conserve battery power and free up memory, you can manually close an application.

- 1 Press and hold **OK**  to open Memory Settings.
- 2 On the Running Programs tab, do one of the following:



- Select the application you want to close, and then select **Stop** to close it.
- Select **Stop All** to close all your open applications.

TIP You can also open Memory Settings from the Start menu. Press **Start**, select **Settings**, select the **System** tab, and then **Memory**.

Using your Today screen


From your Today screen, you can quickly look up a contact, make a call, review your latest calendar appointments, see the number of unread email messages, and even search the web.



To access your Today screen, press **Phone/Send** .

TIP If you press **Phone/Send** while a number is highlighted, your smartphone dials the number. If a number is highlighted, deselect the number, or use the Start menu to access the Today screen.



Title bar and status info: See [What are all those icons?](#) to learn about the icons that appear in this area.

Dial Lookup field: Type the number you want to call and press **Center**  to dial, or begin typing a name to look up the associated number in Contacts. See [Dialing by contact name](#) for more info.

Web search field: Enter a web address or a keyword, and press **Center**  or **Return**  to view a list of search results based on the address or word (data services connection required).

Speed-dial entries: Select a speed-dial button—either a picture or text—to call the number assigned to it. See [Defining speed-dial buttons](#) to create your own.

TIP You can select a picture for your Today screen background and customize which items appear in the Today screen. See [Today screen settings](#) for details.



Your phone

The phone, along with the Today screen, is your home base for making and receiving calls.

You can creatively manage multiple calls; for example, you can swap between calls, send text messages to ignored calls, and create conference calls.

And you can do more than manage your phone calls. You can send text messages, open applications, go to your favorite web pages, see your upcoming appointments, and even find out how many unread email messages you have.

Benefits

- Stay in touch—you choose how
- Work in other applications when on an active call
- Create speed-dial buttons with pictures of your friends

In this chapter

Turning your smartphone on/off	43
Making calls from the Today screen.	44
Other ways of making calls	49
Receiving calls	50
Using voicemail	51
What can I do during a call?	52
Defining speed-dial buttons	57
Using a phone headset	60
Customizing phone settings.	64
What are all those icons?	72

Turning your smartphone on/off


The term *smartphone* refers to the device and its physical aspects. The term *phone* refers to the wireless feature of your smartphone that enables you to connect to the Verizon Wireless network so that you can make and receive calls and send and receive data.

The phone and the screen of your Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone can be turned off and on separately. This means you can wake up the screen to use just the organizer features—Contacts, Calendar, Tasks, and so on—of your device without turning on the phone. Also, when the screen is turned off, the phone can be on and ready for you to receive phone calls or messages.

Turning your phone on

Press and hold **Power/End** .


When your smartphone locates a signal, **Verizon Wireless** appears in the upper-left

of the screen and the **signal-strength**  icon appears at the top of the screen.

DID YOU KNOW? When you turn on your phone and connect to a mobile network, you can make and receive phone calls and use the other wireless services supported by the network. When you are inside a coverage area, the indicator light flashes green and the signal-strength icon bars show the strength of the signal. If you're outside a coverage area, the light flashes amber and no bars appear.

Turning your phone off

Press and hold **Power/End** .

When your phone is off, the **phone-off**  icon appears at the top of the screen and **Phone Off** appears in the upper-left of the screen. Your phone is not connected to any mobile network. However, you can still use Microsoft Office apps and Contacts, Calendar, and the other organizer features of your smartphone.

DID YOU KNOW? You turn your phone on and off using Wireless Manager. Tap the **signal-strength** icon and select **Wireless Manager**. Select **Phone**.

Waking up the screen and turning it off

Wake up the screen and leave the phone turned off when you want to use only the Microsoft Office apps or Contacts, Calendar, and the other organizer features of your smartphone—for example, when you're on a plane and want to look at your calendar. You can also turn off the screen without turning off the wireless features on your smartphone.

Press **Power/End**  turn your screen on or off.

TIP Your screen turns off automatically after a set period of inactivity. You can set how long the screen stays on. Press **Start**, select **Settings**, select the **System** tab, and then select **Power**. Select the **Advanced** tab. Adjust the number of minutes the phone stays on when idle using the **On battery power** setting.

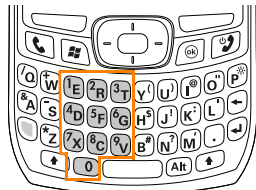
Making calls from the Today screen

Your smartphone offers several ways to make phone calls from the Today screen.

Dialing from the Today screen


BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Using the numbered keys on the keyboard, enter a phone number in the **Dial Lookup** field.



DID YOU KNOW? When you're dialing a phone number or are on a call, you can enter * and # without first pressing Option. This makes it easy to respond to further dialing instructions or to press options when responding to automated instructions.

3 Press **Phone/Send**  to dial.

NOTE You do not need to press Option to access the numbers on the keyboard. However, when dialing short numbers, such as 411, the number may conflict with a contact name. If this occurs, press **Option**  to avoid starting a contact lookup.

TIP If you press **Phone/Send** while a number is highlighted, your smartphone dials the number. If a number is highlighted and you want to access the Today screen, first deselect the number, or use the Start menu.

TIP If you lock your smartphone and select Simple PIN as the password type, you can dial an emergency number by entering the number in the password field and pressing **Phone/Send**. You do not need to press Option before entering the number. However, if you select Strong alphanumeric as the password type, you must first press **Option** twice before entering the number in the password field. See [Locking your smartphone](#).



Dialing with a speed-dial button

Your smartphone enables you to create both picture and text speed-dial buttons so that you can select a button on the Today screen to dial a number quickly.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

- Create some speed-dial buttons. See [Defining speed-dial buttons](#). You can customize the default speed-dial buttons. See [Editing a speed-dial button](#).
- Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).







You can make a call using your speed-dial buttons by doing any of the following:

- Use the 5-way  to highlight a speed-dial button, and then press **Center** .



- Tap a speed-dial button with the stylus.
- Press and hold the Quick Key that you assigned to the speed-dial button.

DID YOU KNOW? You can dial an alternate number for a contact with a speed-dial button. Highlight the speed-dial button, press and hold **Center** on the 5-way (or tap and hold the button), and then select a number from the shortcut menu.

To see more speed-dial buttons, highlight the picture speed-dial area and press **Right**  or **Left**  repeatedly, or highlight the text speed-dial area and press **Up** , **Down** , **Right** , or **Left** .

TIP You can hide your speed-dial buttons on your Today screen and still use your Quick Keys to call a speed-dial number. For details see [Selecting which items appear on your Today screen](#).

Dialing by contact name

You can look up contacts quickly by entering just a few letters of a contact's name directly from your Today screen.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN


- Before you can dial a number by contact name, you must create some contacts (see [Adding a contact](#)), or import them

by synchronizing (see [Synchronizing information](#)).

- Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).
- 1 Go to your Today screen.
 - 2 Using the keyboard, begin entering one or more letters of the contact's first- and last-name letters, insert a space between the first and last name.





For example, entering **SM** finds both Smilla Anderson and John Smith. Entering **SM AN** finds only Smilla Anderson.

To clear the Dial Lookup field and start another Contacts search, press **OK** .

To delete letters when correcting a misspelled name, press **Backspace**.

TIP To see a contact's address, company, and other details, press **Up** on the 5-way to highlight the name, and then press **Center**.


- 3 Highlight the phone number you want to dial.
- 4 Press **Phone/Send**  or press **Center**  to dial.

DID YOU KNOW? After you look up a contact, you can select how you want to communicate with that person. When a contact's name or phone number is highlighted on the search results list, press and hold **Center** on the 5-way, or tap and hold with the stylus, and then select the communication method you want to use.

Dialing using the onscreen Dial Pad

The onscreen Dial Pad is useful when you need to dial numbers that are expressed as letters, and when you need large numbers that you can tap with your finger or the stylus.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).


- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Phone/Send**  and select **Dial Pad** from the menu.
- 3 Use the keyboard keys or tap the onscreen Dial Pad to enter the number.





- 4 Press **Phone/Send**  to dial.

DID YOU KNOW? You can paste numbers directly into the Dial Pad. Copy a number from another application, switch to Dial Pad, and then press and hold **Center** on the 5-way to paste the number.




Redialing a recently called number

To dial the last number you called: Go to your Today screen, and then press and hold **Phone/Send** .

To select from your most recently dialed numbers: Go to your Today screen, press **Phone/Send**  highlight the number or contact name you want to call, and then press **Phone/Send**  to dial.



To select from a chronological list of calls:

Go to your Today screen, press **Phone/Send**  and then select **Call Log**. Highlight the number you want to call, and then press either **Call**  (left softkey) or **Phone/Send**  to dial.





TIP You can also access the Call Log and Dial Pad from the Today screen by pressing **Menu** (right softkey).

Other ways of making calls

Your smartphone offers several ways to make phone calls other than from the Today screen. Try them all and you'll discover which methods you prefer.

Dialing by company name



BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Contacts**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **View By > Company**.
- 3 Press **Phone/Send**  to go to your Today screen.
- 4 Using the keyboard, begin entering the first few letters of the company name.
- 5 Select the number you want to dial.
- 6 Press **Phone/Send**  to dial.

Dialing from a web page or message

Your smartphone recognizes most phone numbers that appear in web pages or in messages (text, email, or multimedia).





- 1 Use the 5-way  to highlight the phone number you want to dial in the web page or message.
- 2 Press **Center**  to open the Phone dialog box, and then select **Yes** to dial.

TIP If you can't dial a phone number directly from a web page or a message, highlight the number, select **Edit** (right softkey), and then select **Copy**. Open the Dial Pad, and then press and hold **Center** on the 5-way to paste. Press **Phone/Send** to dial.

Receiving calls



To answer calls, your phone must be on. This is different from having only the screen turned on (see [Turning your phone on](#)). When your phone is off, your calls go to voicemail.

To answer a call, do one of the following:

- Press **Phone/Send** .
- Press **Answer** .
- If the headset is attached, press the headset button.









TIP See a picture of the person calling you! Learn how to assign a caller ID picture in [Adding a contact](#).

TIP If music is playing when a call arrives, the smartphone rings softly. You can answer the phone as you normally would. The audio pauses during your call.

To ignore a call and send it to voicemail, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Ignore**, or press **Power/End** .

DID YOU KNOW? You can also ignore a call and send a text message. Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Ignore with text message**.

To silence the ringer while your smartphone is ringing:

- Press the **Volume** button or any key on your smartphone except Phone/Send , Power/End , Alt , Start , OK , or the 5-way .
- To immediately silence all system sounds including the ringer, slide the **Ringer** switch to **Sound Off** . All sounds remain off until you slide the **Ringer** switch back to **Sound On** .

When you silence the ringer, you can either answer the call or let it ring through to voicemail.

Using voicemail

Setting up voicemail

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press and hold **1** on the keyboard or select the Voicemail speed-dial button to dial the Verizon Wireless voicemail system.

DID YOU KNOW? The 1 key is the Quick Key for the voicemail speed-dial button. For more info on Quick Keys see [Creating a speed-dial button](#).

TIP If you have trouble accessing a voicemail system, try changing the Dial Pad tone setting. See [Selecting your call settings](#).

- 3 Follow the voice prompts to set up your voicemail.

Retrieving voicemail messages from the Today screen



When you have unretrieved voicemail messages, a Voicemail icon appears at the top of your screen.

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press and hold **1** on the keyboard to dial the Verizon Wireless voicemail system.
- 3 Enter your voicemail password using the keyboard, or press **Extra Digits** (left softkey) if you defined this option (see [Creating a speed-dial button](#) for details).
- 4 Follow the voice prompts to listen to your messages.

DID YOU KNOW? When a Voicemail icon appears at the top of the screen, you can tap this icon to retrieve your voicemail.

TIP You can display onscreen voicemail playback controls; see [Creating a speed-dial button](#)

Retrieving messages from a voicemail notification

NOTE Not all service plans support voicemail notification. Check with Verizon Wireless for more information.

You can retrieve voicemail messages when you receive a notification, or you can dismiss the notification and retrieve the messages later.

- When you have a new voicemail message, a notification screen appears.

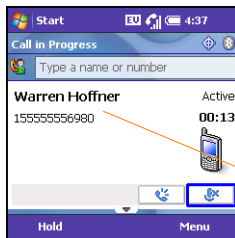


- To hear your message now, press **Listen** (left softkey).
- To retrieve your message later, press **Dismiss** (right softkey).

What can I do during a call?

Your smartphone offers many advanced telephone features, including call waiting, three-way calling, and call forwarding. These features depend on your service plan. Please contact Verizon Wireless for more information.

When you make or receive a call, the active call info appears on your Today screen.





Current duration of call



Caller's name and number



During a call, you can do any of the following:

Navigate around the Today screen: Use Up ▲ and Down ▼ to move around or highlight items.



DID YOU KNOW? The first time you press Up or Down, the active call info is minimized so you can view all of the items on your Today screen. Select the **Call in Progress** entry on the Today screen to maximize the active call info again.

Put the call on hold: Press **Hold**  (left softkey). To take the call off hold, press **Off Hold**  (left softkey).

Use the speakerphone: Select **Speakerphone** . To turn the speakerphone off, select **Speakerphone**  again.

Mute the microphone so you can't be heard: Select **Mute** . To turn the microphone back on, select **Mute**  again.

DID YOU KNOW? When the Speakerphone and Mute icons are selected, they turn gray.


Switch to another application: Press **Start**  and select the application. To return to the active call screen, press **Phone/Send**  to display your Today screen, and then select the **Call in Progress** entry.

DID YOU KNOW? When a call lasts longer than one minute, the screen dims. After two minutes, it dims more. Press any key, except Power/End, to light up the screen.

DID YOU KNOW? You can send and receive text messages during a call. This is a great way to stay connected with colleagues during a long call.

Ending a call


Do one of the following:

- Press **Power/End** .
- Press the headset button (if the headset is attached and has a button on it). Some headsets do not have a button.

Switching applications during a call

You can use many other applications, including the organizer and text message features, on your smartphone while holding a phone conversation. You cannot, however, make some data connections during an active call while connected to a network. For example, on most networks you cannot browse the web or send and receive email while on a voice call. How can you tell which kind of network you're connected to? See [What are all those icons?](#)


To open an application, see [Opening and closing applications](#).

From any application, press **Phone/Send**  to return to your Today screen.

Saving phone numbers

After you hang up a call, you can add the number of the person you were talking with to Contacts if it's not already in your list. If an incoming call uses caller ID blocking, you do not see the Add Contact prompt.





- To create a new contact for this number, select **Create New Contact**.
- To add this number to an existing contact, select **Copy and Add**, and then select a contact name.
- To decline adding the number, press **Dismiss**  (left softkey).
- To disable the Add Contact prompt, select **Don't show this again**.

TIP If you disable the Add Contact prompt, you can turn it on again. From your Today screen, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Preferences > Phone Settings**. On the Phone tab, check the **After calls from numbers that are not in Contacts, ask if I want to add them** box.


TIP You can also save contact info from other applications, such as Messaging.

If you don't add a number right away, follow these steps to add it later:

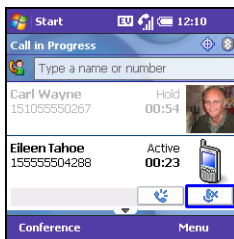
- 1 Go to the Call Log (see [Redialing a recently called number](#)).
- 2 Highlight the number you want to save.
- 3 Press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and then select **Save to Contacts**.
- 4 Enter the information for the entry.
- 5 Press **OK** .

Making a second call

You can make a second call while your first call is still active:


- 1 Place your first call on hold by pressing **Hold** .
- 2 Dial a second number using any of the methods described in [Making calls from the Today screen](#). If you're dialing by contact name or with the keyboard, you must first use the 5-way to select the Dial Lookup field.


When two calls are active, your Today screen includes two call status sections, each representing one of the calls.





Answering a second call (call waiting)

When you're on a call and you receive a second call, the call waiting notification appears. You can do any of the following:




Send the new call to voicemail: Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Ignore**.

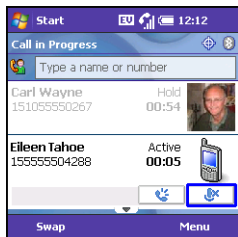
Send the new caller a text message: Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Ignore with text message**. The second call is sent to voicemail. A new text message opens with the phone number of the caller entered in the To field.

Hang up the current call and answer the new call: Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Drop and Answer**. You can also press **Power/End**  to hang up

the current call, and then choose to answer or ignore the new call.

Place the current call on hold and answer the new call:

Press **Answer**  (left softkey) or **Phone/Send** . After you answer the call, press **Swap**  (left softkey) to move between callers by placing the current active call on hold and talking on the other line.




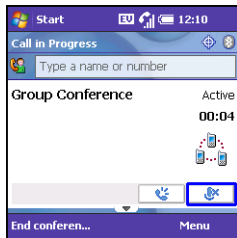
Press to swap between calls



Making a conference call

IMPORTANT You can join two calls into a conference call. Additional charges may apply, and minutes in your mobile account may be deducted for each call. Please

contact Verizon Wireless for more information.

- 1 Put the first call on hold and make a second call (see [Making a second call](#)).
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Conference**. This joins the two calls with you in a conference.





- 3 When you're done, do one of the following:
 - Press **End Conference**  (left softkey) to end the second call and return to the first call.
 - Press **Power/End**  to hang up both calls.

Forwarding calls

You can forward calls to another phone number. Check with Verizon Wireless about availability and pricing of forwarded calls; additional charges may apply.

When all calls are forwarded, the call forwarding icon  appears in the title bar.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Dial ***72** followed by the number where you want to forward your calls. For example: ***72 415-555-1234**.
- 3 Press **Phone/Send**  to dial.
- 4 When you're ready to turn off call forwarding, dial ***73**, and then press **Phone/Send** .

TIP If ***72** and ***73** do not turn call forwarding on and off, contact Verizon Wireless to obtain the forwarding codes for your area.


After you turn on call forwarding, call your smartphone to confirm that call forwarding is active.

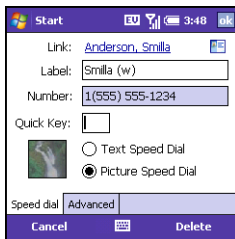
Defining speed-dial buttons

Your smartphone lets you create both picture and text speed-dial buttons so that you can select a button on the Today screen to quickly dial a number.

Creating a speed-dial button

You can create up to 20 picture buttons and 50 text buttons.

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **New Speed Dial**.
- 3 Do one of the following:
 - Select **Link to contact**, select the contact you want to link to this button, and then select the number you want to dial with this button.
 - Select **Label** and enter a name for this button, and then select **Number** and enter the phone number you want to dial with this button.



- 4 (Optional) Enter a Quick Key. When the Today screen is showing, you can press and hold the **Quick Key** to instantly dial this number.

Quick Keys can be letters or numbers, but you can't use both the letter and number on the same key. For example, the voicemail Quick Key is 1. The letter equivalent for that key is E, so you cannot assign E as a Quick Key to another speed-dial button.

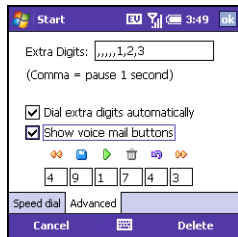
- 5 If this button is linked to a contact entry with a picture, select either **Text Speed Dial** or **Picture Speed Dial** to indicate which type of button you want to create. If this button is not linked to a contact or the contact doesn't have a

picture, the Picture Speed Dial option is not available.


TIP You can add a special ringtone to a contact associated with the speed-dial button. See [Adding a contact](#).

- 6 (Optional) Select the **Advanced** tab and set any of the following options:







Extra Digits: Defines additional numbers to dial, such as a password or extension. In addition to numbers, you can enter the following symbols: star (*) and pound (#). To enter a one-second pause, enter a comma (,).



Dial extra digits automatically: Dials predefined Extra Digits immediately after dialing the phone number. If you


do not check this box, you must press **Extra Digits**  (left softkey) to dial these digits.

Show voice mail buttons: Displays the voicemail playback controls after you dial this speed-dial number. When this option is checked, you can enter numbers below each control to tailor the controls to your voicemail system.

-  Plays the previous message.
-  Saves the current message.
-  Plays the current message.
-  Deletes the current message.
-  Repeats the current message.
-  Plays the next message.

7 Press **OK** .



Editing a speed-dial button

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Highlight the speed-dial button you want to edit.
- 3 Press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and then select **Edit Speed Dial**.







- 4 Make the desired changes.
- 5 Press **OK** .

TIP You can also edit a speed-dial button by pressing **Menu** (right softkey), selecting **Speed Dial Options**, and then selecting the button you want to edit.

Deleting a speed-dial button

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Highlight the speed-dial button you want to delete.
- 3 Press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and then select **Edit Speed Dial**.
- 4 Press **Delete**  (right softkey).
- 5 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

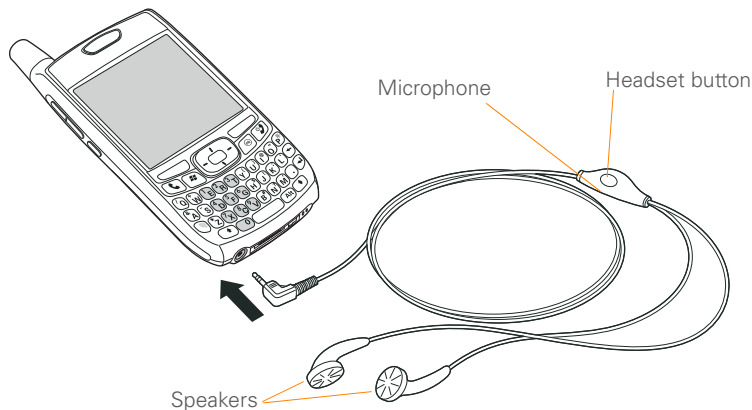
Arranging your speed-dial buttons

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Speed Dial Options**.
- 3 Highlight the button you want to move.
- 4 Press **Option**  + **Left**  or **Right**  or **Up**  or **Down**  to move the button in that direction.

Using a phone headset

You can connect a phone headset for hands-free operation. You can use either the headset that came with your smartphone or a compatible third-party headset.

Using a wired headset



IMPORTANT If driving while using a smartphone is permitted where you are and you need to make a call, we recommend using a phone headset or a hands-free car kit (sold separately). If you must use the wired headset while driving, place a speaker in only one ear. Leave the other ear free to hear outside noises. Make such a call only if it is legal to do so and you can do so safely.

The headset button is context-sensitive, and it performs various actions based on the situation. You can press the headset button to do any of the following tasks:



- Answer an incoming call
- Respond to call waiting
- Hang up all calls
- Swap between calls if the second call is an incoming call
- Create a conference call if the second call is an outgoing call

NOTE Your smartphone works with headsets that have a 2.5mm, 3-pin connector (look for two colored bands on the plug). When in doubt, ask the third-party headset manufacturer if the product is compatible with Palm Treo 700wx smartphones. If you hear a headset buzz or poor microphone performance, your headset may be incompatible with your smartphone.

Using a THB wired car kit

Your smartphone includes software that enables you to choose settings for the THB wired car kit (car kit sold separately). To

access these car kit settings, do the following:

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **THB Kit** .

Connecting to a Bluetooth® hands-free device

YourTreo 700wx smartphone is also compatible with many headsets and car kits (sold separately) enabled with Bluetooth® wireless technology version 1.1 or 1.2.


For a list of compatible hands-free devices with Bluetooth wireless technology, go to palm.com/us/support/bluetooth/bluetooth_compatibility.html.

NOTE You can use a stereo Bluetooth headset that is A2DP-enabled to listen to MP3 files on your smartphone. You cannot, however, use a mono Bluetooth headset to listen to MP3 files.

After you set up a connection with a Bluetooth headset or hands-free car kit, you can use that device with your smartphone whenever the two devices are

within range and the Bluetooth feature on each device is turned on. The range varies greatly, depending on environmental factors. The maximum is about 30 feet (10 meters).

DID YOU KNOW? If you have both a compatible Bluetooth headset and a car kit, the one you connected to your smartphone last becomes the active device.

- 1 If necessary, prepare the device with which you want to connect to accept a new connection. Check the device's documentation for details. Be sure to find out if the device has a predefined passkey that you need to enter on your smartphone in step 7.
- 2 Go to your Today screen and tap **Bluetooth** .

DID YOU KNOW? The Bluetooth icon on your Today screen indicates the status of the Bluetooth feature. See [The Bluetooth status icon](#) for details.

- 3 Select the **Mode** tab and check the **Turn on Bluetooth** box.



- 4 Select the **Devices** tab, and then select **Add new device**.



- 5 Wait for your smartphone to search for devices and to display the device list.



- 6 Select the device you want to connect to, and then press **Next** (right softkey).
- 7 Enter a passkey between 1 and 16 digits long, and then press **Next** (right softkey).

IMPORTANT Some hands-free devices have a predefined passkey. If your hands-free device has a predefined passkey, you can find it in the documentation for that device. Other devices provide a screen where you enter a passkey that you make up. In either case,

you must use the same passkey on both your smartphone and your hands-free device. We recommend that you use a passkey of 16 digits, where possible, to improve the security of your smartphone. The longer the passkey, the more difficult it is for the passkey to be deciphered.



- 8 If the passkey is not predefined, enter the same passkey on the other Bluetooth device, and then press **Finish** (right softkey).
- 9 Check the **Hands Free** box, and then press **Finish** (right softkey).
- 10 Press **OK**.

You can now use that hands-free device with your smartphone whenever the two devices are within range and the Bluetooth feature on each device is turned on. The range varies greatly, depending on environmental factors. The maximum is about 30 feet (10 meters).

Using a Bluetooth hands-free device

To learn how to set up and connect to Bluetooth devices, see [Connecting to a Bluetooth® hands-free device](#).

Here are tips for working with a Bluetooth hands-free device:



- To transfer a call from the handset to a Bluetooth hands-free device during a call, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Connect Bluetooth**. To transfer the call back to the headset, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Cancel Bluetooth**.
- To transfer a call from a wired headset to a Bluetooth headset or car kit that is within range and with which you've previously set up a partnership (Bluetooth headset or car kit required, sold separately), unplug the wired headset and press the button on the Bluetooth headset or car kit.
- To find out how to transfer your contacts from your smartphone to your car kit, go to palm.com/us/support/treo/treo700wxverizon/.

DID YOU KNOW? If you're using a Bluetooth hands-free device and it is within range, your smartphone routes all calls to the hands-free device instead of to the earpiece on your smartphone. Bluetooth range is up to 30 feet (10 meters) in optimum environmental conditions.

Customizing phone settings

Selecting ringtones and display notices

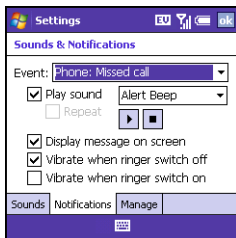
You can set different tones for different types of incoming phone calls and notifications. You can download MP3, MIDI, AMR, WAV, and WMA ringtones directly to your smartphone (see [Downloading files and images from a web page](#)). You can also download ringtones to your computer and then email them to your phone.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Sounds & Notifications** .
- 3 Select the **Notifications** tab.
- 4 Select the **Event** list, and then select the type of call or notification for which you want to set the ringtone:

Phone: Known Caller: An incoming call from someone in your contacts list or speed-dial list.



Phone: Missed call: A call you did not answer.




Phone: Roaming: A call that comes in when you're outside your home mobile network.

Phone: Unknown Caller: An incoming call from someone identified by caller ID who is not in your contacts list or speed-dial list.

Phone: Voice mail: A new voicemail.

- 5 If you selected Known Caller, Roaming, or Unknown Caller, select the ring type and the ringtone. Select the **Play** icon to preview the ringtone sound.

- 6 If you selected Missed call or Voice mail, set the following options:
- Check the **Play Sound** box if you want to have a sound played when the event occurs.
 - If you checked the **Play Sound** box, select the sound for the selected type of call. You can also check the **Repeat** box to have the sound repeat.
 - (Optional) Select the **Play** icon to preview the sound.
 - Check the **Display message on screen** box to have a message displayed when the event occurs.
- 7 Check the **Vibrate when...** boxes to turn the vibrate feature on/off based on the **Ringer** switch setting.
- 8 Repeat steps 4–7 to select ringtones for other types of calls.
- 9 Press **OK** .

DID YOU KNOW? You can record, preview, delete, and send sounds on your smartphone. You can also set sounds for messaging notifications and calendar reminders. See [Selecting Sounds & Notifications](#).

Adjusting call and ringer volume







Volume

Call volume: While a call is in progress, press **Volume** (on the side of your smartphone) to adjust the call volume.

Ringer volume: When a call is not in progress and you are not playing music or a video, press **Volume** to adjust ringer volume.



Assigning a caller ID picture and ringtone

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Contacts**.
- 2 Highlight the contact that you want to give a picture and ringtone ID, then press **Center** .
- 3 Highlight the contact's name, and press **Edit**  (left softkey).
- 4 Select **Picture**.

- 5 Select **Camera** to take a picture and add it to this contact entry (camera version only), or select an existing picture for this contact entry.
 - 6 Select **Ring tone**.
 - 7 Select a tone for this contact entry.
 - 8 Press **OK** .
- 3 On the Phone tab, set any of the following options:
 - Dialpad:** Sets the style for the Dial Pad tones (DTMF) in the Phone application.
 - **Short tones:** Tones sound briefly as you dial.
 - **Long tones:** Tones continue to sound until you release the key.

Selecting your call settings

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Turn on your phone to access your Phone Settings. See [Turning your smartphone on/off](#).

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Phone** .



TIP If you have trouble accessing a voicemail system, try changing the Dialpad tone setting.



TTY/TDD: Lets you configure your smartphone for use with a TTY/DTDD device for people who are deaf or hard of hearing (see [Enabling TTY](#) for more information).

After calls from numbers that are not in Contacts, ask if I want to add them: Indicates whether you are prompted to add contact entries for numbers that are not already in your contacts list.

- 4 Press **OK** .

Setting your dialing preferences

Dialing preferences let you assign a prefix to your phone numbers. For example, you can automatically dial a 1 before all 10-digit phone numbers. You can add a different prefix based on the length of the phone number.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Phone** .
- 3 Select the **Dialing** tab and set any of the following options:



Dialing from North America: Formats phone numbers using North American conventions (XXX-XXX-XXXX) and sets the International Dialing Prefix to 011.

Always dial 1 in front of the area code

code: Adds a 1 in front of 10-digit phone numbers. This option is available only when North American Dialing is enabled.

International Dialing Prefix: Adds the specified number in front of international phone numbers when dialing from outside North America. When an international number beginning with + (plus sign) is dialed, the + is replaced with the number in this field.

- 4 Press **OK** .



Setting your abbreviated dialing preferences

Abbreviated dialing is a way to automatically dial a complete phone number when you enter a shortened version of that number. Shortened phone numbers are typically used in corporate phone systems to allow internal users to dial an extension number rather than the complete number.

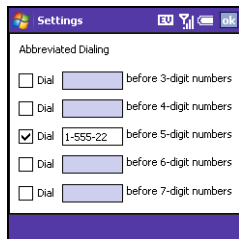
For example, if your co-worker's phone number is 1-555-222-1234, you may need

to dial only the last five digits of that number from an internal phone. In that case, you would dial 21234. If that shortened five-digit internal number appears in your contact list or in a corporate Global Address List (GAL), your smartphone cannot dial that number because it is not on the internal phone network. You can, however, use the abbreviated dialing settings to automatically complete shortened numbers.

For example, if all the phone numbers in your office begin with 1-555-22, followed by a five-digit extension, set your smartphone to automatically enter 1-555-22 as the prefix before any five-digit number. When you enter your colleague's five-digit extension, your smartphone automatically dials 1-555-22 plus the five-digit extension. The complete number is 1-555-222-1234.

- 1 Press Start  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Phone** .
- 3 Select the **Dialing** tab and select **Abbreviated Dialing**.




- 4 Check the box that corresponds to the number of digits in the shortened version of the phone numbers you commonly dial (3, 4, 5, 6, or 7). Selecting the option adds a prefix to numbers with the specified number of digits.
- 5 Enter the numbers that you want to be added to the shortened version of the phone number



- 6 Press **OK** .

Adding contact numbers from new callers


By default, you are prompted to add contact entries for numbers that are not already in your Contacts list. You can turn this feature on or off.

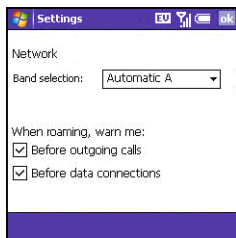
- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Phone** .
- 3 On the Phone tab, uncheck the **After calls from numbers that are not in Contacts, ask if I want to add them** box to turn this feature off, or check this box to turn this feature back on.
- 4 Press **OK** .

Manually selecting your network settings

IMPORTANT The network settings are preset for optimum performance. Do not change these settings unless instructed to do so by a representative from Verizon Wireless.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Preferences > Phone Settings**.
- 3 Select the **Services** tab and then select **Network**.



- 4 From the **Band selection** list, select an option:

Automatic X: The network connection is automatically made.

Manual: Network connections are manually made. If you are manually selecting a network, select a network from the list of available networks.

- 5 Check the boxes to enable either or both of the following roaming options:



Before outgoing calls: Causes an alert to appear, warning you that you are on a roaming network when you attempt to dial an outgoing call.

Before data connections: Prevents a data connection while roaming. An alert appears, warning you that you are on a

roaming network when you attempt to make a data connection.

- 6 Press **OK** .



Selecting your privacy settings

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Phone** .
- 3 Select the **Services** tab and set any of the following options:

Voice Privacy: Prevents over-the-air eavesdropping when this option is turned on and this feature is available on the Verizon Wireless network.

Location Privacy: Indicates whether your smartphone broadcasts your location at all times, or only during a 911 call.

TIP For quick access to the Location Privacy setting, tap the **Location Privacy** icon on your Today Screen (see [What are all those icons?](#)).

- 4 Press **OK**  to return to Phone Settings.
- 5 Press **OK**  to finish.



Enabling TTY

You can enable your smartphone for use with a TTY/TDD device. A TTY (also known as a TDD or Text Telephone) is a telecommunications device that enables people who are deaf or hard of hearing, or who have speech or language disabilities, to communicate by telephone.

Your smartphone is compatible with select TTY devices. You can connect a TTY/TDD machine, headset, or hands-free kit to your smartphone through the headset jack while in TTY/TDD mode.

Please check with the manufacturer of your TTY device for connectivity information. Be sure that the TTY device supports digital wireless transmission.

- Make sure a TTY/TDD device is connected to the headset jack on your smartphone. When you enable TTY, all audio modes are disabled on your smartphone, including holding the smartphone up to your ear and listening.
- Turn on your phone to access your Phone Settings. See [Turning your phone on](#).

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Phone** .




- 3 On the Phone tab, select the **TTY/TDD** list and then select one of the following:


Off: Sends and receives voice.

TTY Full: Sends and receives text.

TTY + Talk: Sends voice and receives text.

TTY + Hear: Sends text and receives voice. If an alert appears, press OK .

- 4 Press **OK** .

NOTE When TTY/TDD is on, a TTY/TDD  icon appears at the top of the Today screen.

What are all those icons?

You can monitor the status of several items using icons at the top of your Today screen:

Verizon Wireless

Your phone is on and you're in a Verizon Wireless coverage area. If you're roaming on another wireless service provider's network, **Roaming** or **Extended Network** appears instead. If you're outside a coverage area, **No service** appears instead. When you turn off your phone, **Phone Off** appears instead.

You missed an incoming call.

You have a voicemail message.

You have a new email message.





You have a new text or multimedia message.



You have more than one of the conditions listed above.



Your phone is on. The bars display the signal strength. The stronger the signal, the more bars that appear. If you are outside a coverage area, no bars appear.



Your phone is off.



You are outside a Verizon Wireless coverage area and are roaming on another wireless service provider's network. Additional fees may apply for calls or data transmission. Data services may not be available when you are roaming.



A voice call is in progress.



TTY/TDD is turned on.



All calls are being forwarded.



You are in an area that supports NationalAccess (1xRTT) data services.



You are in an area that supports BroadbandAccess (EVDO) data services.



A NationalAccess data call is in progress. You can make calls, but you cannot receive calls; any incoming calls go to voicemail. When you make a call, the data transmission is automatically interrupted.



A BroadbandAccess data call is in progress. You can still make or receive calls. When you make or receive a call, the data transmission is automatically interrupted.



Your phone is connected to a NationalAccess network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls.



Your phone is connected to a BroadbandAccess network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls.



ActiveSync synchronization is in progress with a Windows XP computer.



Your smartphone is connected to a computer or network, or Windows Mobile Device Center sync is in progress with a Windows Vista computer.



A data connection is not available or your phone is off.



Your smartphone battery is low.



Your smartphone battery is being charged.



Your smartphone is connected to a power outlet and the battery is fully charged.



Voice privacy is preventing over-the-air eavesdropping. Appears during a call when this option is turned on and is available on the Verizon Wireless network.



Location privacy is turned off, so your smartphone can broadcast your GPS location. The whereabouts of your smartphone can be determined by the Verizon Wireless network, by emergency agencies like 911, and by other apps on your smartphone.



Location privacy is turned on, so only emergency call operators can determine the location of your smartphone. Your smartphone's location cannot be determined by other apps on your smartphone.



Bluetooth® wireless technology is off.



Bluetooth wireless technology is on.



Your smartphone is communicating with another Bluetooth device.



A call is in progress and your smartphone is connected to a Bluetooth headset or car kit.



You have a reminder. If the reminder is not displayed on your Today screen, tap the icon to open the reminder.



You have an alert from Microsoft. If the alert is not displayed on your Today screen, tap the icon to open the alert.



Synchronizing information

Synchronizing means that information that has been entered or updated in one place—your Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone, your computer, or your corporate server—is automatically updated in the other. There's no need to enter information twice. Some types of synchronization can happen on an automated schedule, so you don't even have to think about it.

After you get into the habit of synchronizing regularly, you'll know what a powerful tool synchronization is for transferring, updating, and backing up large amounts of information on your smartphone.

Benefits

- Quickly enter and update information on your computer and your smartphone
- Send photos and videos to your smartphone from your desktop computer
- Protect your information

In this chapter

Synchronization overview	79
How do I synchronize?	79
What can I synchronize?	80
Setting up your computer for synchronization	83
Synchronizing using the sync cable	89
Setting up wireless synchronization	90
Other ways to synchronize	94
Setting synchronization options	96

Synchronization overview

When you synchronize, info you enter on your smartphone, your computer, or your corporate server is automatically updated in the other location. There's no need to enter the info twice. This is true whether you sync with your computer using desktop synchronization software (see [Setting up your computer for synchronization](#)) or wirelessly with your company's Exchange server using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync (see [Setting up wireless synchronization](#)).

How do I synchronize?

There are a number of ways to synchronize:

- Install desktop sync software on your computer.
- Synchronize wirelessly with an Exchange server.
- Maximize your sync options by doing both.

Synchronizing with desktop sync software

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Install the current version of the desktop sync software. You must install this software even if you have already installed a previous version of desktop sync software. See [Installing ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP](#) or [Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista](#) for instructions.

After you install desktop sync software, you can synchronize by connecting your

smartphone to your computer using any of the following:

Sync cable: See [Synchronizing using the sync cable](#).

Bluetooth® wireless technology: See [Synchronizing over a Bluetooth connection](#).

Infrared (IR): See [Synchronizing over an infrared connection](#).

The sync application on your smartphone is called ActiveSync. The name of the desktop sync software on your computer depends on your computer's operating system:

Windows XP computer: The desktop sync software is called ActiveSync® desktop software.

Windows Vista computer: The desktop sync software is called Windows Mobile Device Center.

Synchronizing wirelessly with the server

You can set up your smartphone to synchronize email and other information wirelessly with Microsoft Exchange Server 2007 or Exchange Server 2003 using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync (see

[Setting up wireless synchronization](#)). If you choose this method, synchronization takes place automatically after setup. You do not need to install the software from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD.

NOTE We recommend that you install the desktop sync software from the CD even if you synchronize wirelessly with the server. You need the desktop sync software to synchronize pictures, videos, music files, and other info directly with your computer.

What can I synchronize?

If you have Microsoft Office Outlook® 2002 or later installed on your computer, by default, the following information is synchronized when you synchronize using either desktop sync software or Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync:



You can, however, customize sync settings to suit your needs and sync only some of these applications.

If you set up synchronization with your computer using the desktop sync software, information in the Favorites application is synchronized by default as well. You can also change settings to synchronize Word, Excel, PowerPoint, and PDF files, as well as pictures, music, videos, and other types of files (see [Changing which applications sync](#)).

DID YOU KNOW? Synchronizing Favorites gives you an easy way to get favorites from the web browser on your computer into the web browser on your smartphone. Just add them to the folder called Mobile Favorites, which shows up in your computer browser's list of favorites. When you sync, they become available on your smartphone as well. Backup copies of any favorites that you add on the smartphone browser are also stored in the Mobile Favorites folder.

IMPORTANT To synchronize Calendar, Contacts, Messaging (email and text messages), and Tasks, you must have Outlook 2002 or later installed on your

computer. If you want to synchronize pictures, music, and videos, you need to have Windows Media Player 10 or later installed on your computer.

TIP If you don't already have Outlook or Windows Media Player installed on your computer, you can install them from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD. Insert the CD into your computer's CD drive, select **Add Programs** (Windows XP) or **Bonus Software** (Windows Vista), and then select **Windows Media Player** or the link to download a trial version of Outlook 2007.

TIP If you want to synchronize with a personal information manager (PIM) other than Microsoft Office Outlook, you must install a third-party solution. Contact the PIM's vendor to learn if software is available for your smartphone.

This table lists the types of info you can synchronize and the methods to use.

Info type	Method	Where to learn more
Outlook Contacts, Calendar, Tasks	Desktop sync software (sync with computer) <i>or</i> Exchange ActiveSync (direct sync with server)	Setting up your computer for synchronization <i>or</i> Setting up wireless synchronization
Outlook Email	Desktop sync software <i>or</i> Exchange ActiveSync	Setting up your computer for synchronization <i>or</i> Setting up wireless synchronization
Word, Excel, PowerPoint, PDF files	Desktop sync software	Setting up your computer for synchronization Synchronizing your Microsoft Office files Changing which applications sync
Music and video files	Desktop sync software <i>and</i> Windows Media Player	Setting up your computer for synchronization Changing which applications sync Transferring media files to your smartphone
Pictures	Windows XP: Desktop sync software Windows Vista: Desktop sync software <i>and</i> Windows Media Player	Setting up your computer for synchronization Changing which applications sync Transferring media files to your smartphone (Windows Vista)

Info type	Method	Where to learn more
Outlook Notes	Desktop sync software	Setting up your computer for synchronization Changing which applications sync
Files to be transferred to an expansion card	Desktop sync software	Setting up your computer for synchronization Changing which applications sync

Setting up your computer for synchronization

Before you can synchronize, you need to install synchronization software and connect your smartphone to your computer using the sync cable. Even if you already have desktop sync software installed on your computer, you must install the current version of the software.

System requirements

Your computer must meet the following minimum system requirements:

- Windows 2000 Service Pack 4, Windows XP Service Pack 2, or Windows Vista (later versions may also be supported)
- 32MB of available memory (RAM)
- 170MB of free hard disk space
- CD drive
- Available USB port
- USB sync cable (included with your smartphone)
- Adobe Flash Player (required to run the installation program)

TIP If you do not have Adobe Flash Player on your computer, you can download it for free from adobe.com

Installing ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP

If you have a Windows XP computer, the desktop sync software is called ActiveSync desktop software. On your smartphone, the sync application is called ActiveSync.

If your smartphone runs Windows Mobile 5.0, use the version of ActiveSync desktop software included on the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD, which came with your smartphone. The Windows Mobile Getting Started CD recognizes that you have a Windows XP computer and automatically directs you to install ActiveSync desktop software.

If you have upgraded your smartphone to Windows Mobile 6 Professional edition, you must download and install version 4.5 of ActiveSync desktop software on your computer. Do not use the version included on the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN If you are installing the software on a computer at work, make sure your company allows you to install new software—for example, that you have Administrator privileges. Contact your company's IT department for help.

1 Close any applications that are currently running on your computer, including those running in the background. Your computer must have all its resources available to install the software.

2 Do one of the following:

If your smartphone runs Windows

Mobile 5.0: Insert the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD into the CD drive on your computer.

**If your smartphone has been
upgraded to Windows Mobile 6**

Professional: On your computer, go to palm.com/us/support/treo/treo700wxverizon/ and follow the link to download ActiveSync.

3 Follow the installation instructions that appear on both your computer and your smartphone.

During installation, you connect your smartphone to your computer and sync for the first time. Be sure to watch what's happening on both your computer and your smartphone. For more info, see [Connecting your smartphone to your computer](#) and [Synchronization: Overview](#).

TIP During software installation, you can select an option to synchronize email, contacts, calendar events, and tasks directly with Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 or 2007. If you choose this option, you are prompted to enter your mail server address and domain name and your Exchange server account username and password.

DID YOU KNOW? You can also install additional software from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD (see [Installing bonus software from the CD](#)).

Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista

If you have a Windows Vista computer, the desktop sync software is called Windows Mobile Device Center. The Windows Mobile Getting Started CD recognizes that you have a Windows Vista computer and

automatically directs you to install Windows Mobile Device Center. On your smartphone, the sync application is called ActiveSync.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN If you are installing the software on a computer at work, make sure your company allows you to install new software—for example, that you have Administrator privileges. Contact your company's IT department for help.

- 1 Close any applications that are currently running on your computer, including those running in the background. Your computer must have all its resources available to install the software.
- 2 Insert the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD into the CD drive on your computer.
- 3 If prompted, click **RunStart.exe**.
- 4 Click **Continue**.
- 5 Select your language and click **Next**.
- 6 Select **Setup and Installation**.
- 7 Make sure the **Windows Mobile Device Center** box is checked, and click **Install**.

- 8 Follow the installation instructions that appear on both your computer and your smartphone.

During installation, you connect your smartphone to your computer and sync for the first time. Be sure to watch what's happening on both your computer and your smartphone. For more info, see [Connecting your smartphone to your computer](#) and [Synchronization: Overview](#).

Using the desktop sync software

After you install the desktop sync software, synchronization happens automatically anytime you connect your smartphone to your computer, as described in the next section.

You can also open the desktop sync software window on your computer to perform the following tasks:


- Install applications from your computer to your smartphone (see [Installing applications from your computer](#)) or to an expansion card inserted into the expansion card slot on your smartphone

(see [Installing applications onto an expansion card](#))

- Change which applications synchronize
- In ActiveSync desktop software on a Windows XP computer, enter settings to synchronize wirelessly with Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 or 2007

DID YOU KNOW? You can also change which applications synchronize (see [Changing which applications sync](#)) and enter settings to synchronize wirelessly (see [Setting up wireless synchronization](#)) in the ActiveSync app on your smartphone. Whether you enter changes on your smartphone or on your computer, the changes are transferred to the other location the next time you synchronize.

To access all of the desktop sync software features, your smartphone must be connected to your computer using the sync cable. After your smartphone are your computer are connected, do one of the following:

Windows XP: To open the ActiveSync desktop software window, double-click the **ActiveSync**  icon in the taskbar in the lower-right corner of your computer screen.

TIP If the ActiveSync icon does not appear in the taskbar, go to **Start**, navigate to **Programs**, and then select **Microsoft ActiveSync** to open the ActiveSync window.

TIP You can enter a setting to have the ActiveSync window open automatically when you connect your computer and your smartphone. In the ActiveSync window, select **File > Connection Settings**, and then check the **Open ActiveSync when my device connects** box.

Windows Vista: To open Windows Mobile Device Center, click **Start > All Programs > Windows Mobile Device Center**.

Desktop software installation also creates a folder for your smartphone on your computer. When your smartphone is connected to your computer, opening My Computer or Windows Explorer (Windows XP) or Computer (Windows Vista) displays an icon representing your smartphone. Double-clicking this icon displays folders containing items you synchronized, such as music files, pictures, and videos.

Connecting your smartphone to your computer

NOTE If you're transferring info from a previous Windows Mobile® device or from a Palm OS® by ACCESS device, you can learn more about how to move content, such as pictures, music, and files, to your smartphone by going to palm.com/us/support/treo/treo700wxverizon/.

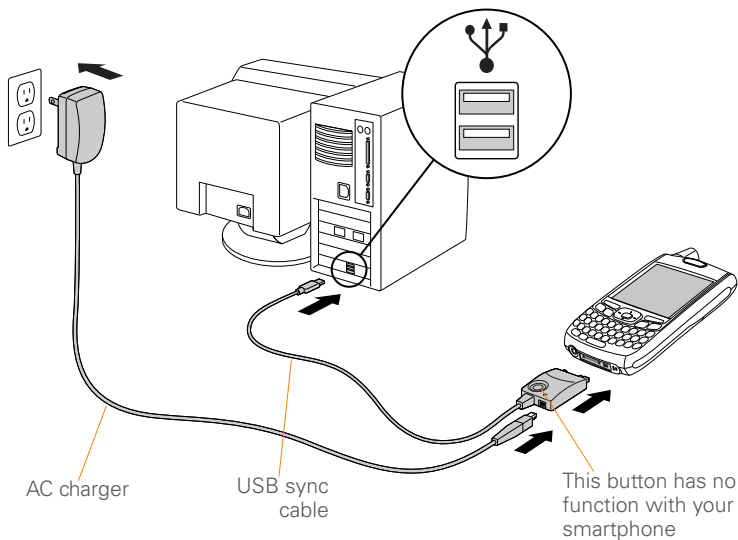
- 1 Plug the **USB sync cable** into an available USB port or into a powered USB hub on your computer.

TIP For best performance, plug your sync cable directly into a USB port on your computer. If your computer has USB ports on both the front and back, we suggest using the back port. If you use a USB hub, make sure it's a powered hub.

- 2 Connect the sync cable to your smartphone by inserting it into the two sockets to the left on the bottom of the smartphone.

- 3 Connect the charger cable to the multi-connector on the bottom of your smartphone.

TIP When the sync cable is inserted into the multi-connector, you can insert the AC charger into the socket on the sync cable to charge your smartphone.





Synchronizing using the sync cable


Every time you connect your smartphone to your computer, the desktop sync software automatically turns on and checks whether changes you made on the computer or on the smartphone need to be synchronized.

- 1 Connect your smartphone to your computer (see [Connecting your smartphone to your computer](#)).



- 2 Check for synchronization progress:

Windows XP: Look for the animated **ActiveSync**  icon at the top of your smartphone screen and the **ActiveSync**  icon, now turned green, in the taskbar on your computer.

Windows Vista: Look for the animated **connection**  icon at the top of your smartphone screen.

- If you don't see the correct icon, make sure the desktop sync software that came with your smartphone is running on your computer.
- If you have any problems synchronizing, see [Synchronization: Overview](#) for troubleshooting suggestions.

TIP We recommend that you install the backup and restore app from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD. A backup and restore app preserves your data and settings if your smartphone is ever lost or stolen, and it protects your data during a hard reset.

Setting up wireless synchronization

Does your company use Microsoft Outlook as its email solution? Does your company also use Microsoft Exchange Server 2007 or 2003 as its email server? If so, you may be able to wirelessly synchronize the email and other Outlook info on your smartphone and the same info stored on the Exchange server using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync.

If you are using Exchange Server 2007, or Exchange Server 2003 that has been upgraded to Service Pack 2, you may be able to take advantage of the additional features of Microsoft Direct Push. Microsoft Direct Push is a two-way wireless delivery method that keeps your Outlook information always up-to-date and provides more efficient communication between the server and your smartphone. It includes features like Global Address List, Tasks Over The Air (OTA), and IP-based push updating of Calendar and Messaging (email and text messages).

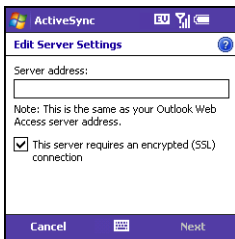
DID YOU KNOW? Because your desktop copy of Outlook also syncs with the server, whatever is synchronized to the server from your smartphone also shows up in Outlook; and whatever you enter or change in Outlook on your computer syncs to the server and then shows up on your smartphone.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN To synchronize wirelessly, you need to set up an Exchange Server account. Work with your system administrator to gather the following info, and then follow the steps in this section to set up an account:

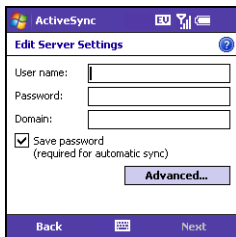
- Mail server address and domain name.
- The username and password you use to access your corporate mail server.
- Security connection: Does your server use an encrypted (SSL) connection?
- Security measure: Is it OK to store your corporate email password on your smartphone?

TIP If you installed ActiveSync desktop software on a Windows XP computer, you may have already set up your smartphone to synchronize wirelessly with the server. To check, press **Start**, select **Programs**, and then select **ActiveSync**. Press **Menu** (right softkey). If Configure Server appears instead of Add Server Source, wireless sync is already set up, and you can skip this procedure.

- 1 Press **Start** and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **ActiveSync**.
- 3 Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Add Server Source**.
- 4 Enter the server address. Check the **This server requires an encrypted (SSL) connection** box if your server uses an encrypted connection.



- 5 Press **Next** (right softkey).
- 6 Enter the username and password you use to access your corporate mail server, and enter the Exchange server domain.



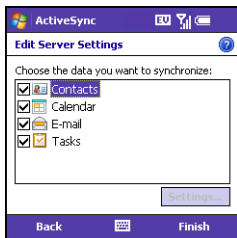
NOTE You can't see your password as you enter it, so be careful. Be sure Caps Lock and Option Lock are not on unless you need them. For info on how to enter characters, see [Entering lowercase and uppercase letters](#) and [Entering numbers, punctuation, and symbols](#).

TIP The Exchange server settings are case-sensitive. Be sure to enter uppercase and lowercase letters properly.

- 7 Check the **Save password** box.

TIP If you found out from your system administrator that it is not OK to store your corporate email password on your smartphone, don't check the **Save password** box. You must synchronize manually (see [Initiating a wireless sync manually](#)).

- 8 (Optional) Select **Advanced** to set the rules for fixing sync conflicts.
- 9 Press **Next** (right softkey) and check the boxes for the types of information you want to synchronize with the Exchange server.



- 10 (Optional) Highlight an item and select **Settings** to change the synchronization settings for that type of information. Settings are not available for all items.

TIP To automatically download more of an incoming email message than the default setting, select **E-mail** in step 10 and select a higher number from the **Download size limit** list. If you don't increase this setting, you can manually download the rest of the message at your convenience.

- 11 Press **Finish** (right softkey). Synchronization with your Exchange server begins automatically. A status bar appears onscreen indicating sync progress.

You can set a schedule for synchronization to take place anytime info is updated on either your smartphone or the server or at certain intervals (see [Setting the synchronization schedule](#)), or allow synchronization to take place only when you initiate it manually (see [Initiating a wireless sync manually](#)).

Setting the synchronization schedule




You can set a synchronization schedule in either of the following situations:

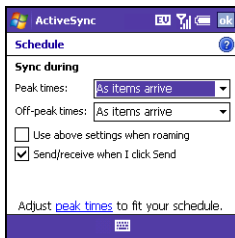
If you use Microsoft Exchange Server 2007, or Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 with Service Pack 2:

By default, wireless sync takes place anytime info is updated on either your smartphone or the server using Microsoft Direct Push. To save battery life, however, you can set synchronization to take place at intervals that you specify.

If you use Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 that is not upgraded to Service Pack 2:

By default, wireless sync does not take place automatically. Set a synchronization schedule to have sync take place either anytime info is updated on your smartphone or the server, or at certain intervals.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **ActiveSync** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Schedule**.



- 4 Set any of the following options:
 - Peak times:** Sets the frequency for high-traffic time periods such as when you are at work or when email volume is high.
 - Off-peak times:** Sets the frequency for low-traffic time periods such as late at night.

Use above settings when roaming:

Sets the frequency while you are roaming outside Verizon Wireless's network. By default, a scheduled sync does not work while you are roaming. This is to prevent roaming charges on your account. If roaming charges are not a concern, check this box.




Send/receive when I click Send: Sets whether items are sent as soon as you select Send in the Messaging application, or whether they are held until the next synchronization.

- 5 Press **OK** .

Initiating a wireless sync manually

If you want to control exactly when a wireless sync takes place, or if it is not OK to store your corporate email password on your smartphone, you can initiate sync manually.

- 1 To set up manual sync, follow the preceding procedure, [Setting the synchronization schedule](#). In the Peak times and Off-peak times lists, select **Manually**.

- 2 To initiate a manual sync, press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 3 Select **ActiveSync** .
- 4 Press **Sync**  (left softkey).


Other ways to synchronize

Synchronizing over a Bluetooth connection






You can synchronize your computer and smartphone using Bluetooth wireless technology.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your computer is equipped with Bluetooth wireless technology and that the computer is set to be visible.

- 1 Do one of the following:

Windows XP: On your computer, double-click the **ActiveSync**  icon in the taskbar in the lower-right corner of the screen. In the ActiveSync window, select **File**, and then select **Connection Settings**.

Windows Vista: Click **Start > All Programs > Windows Mobile Device Center**. Select **Connect without setting up your device**, and then select **Connection settings**.



- 2 Check the **Allow connections to one of the following** box, and then select **Bluetooth**.
 - 3 On your smartphone, press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
 - 4 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Bluetooth** .
 - 5 Select the **Mode** tab and check the **Turn on Bluetooth** box.
 - 6 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
 - 7 Select **ActiveSync** .
 - 8 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Connect via Bluetooth**.
 - 9 If this is the first time you're making a Bluetooth connection to this computer, follow the onscreen prompts to set up a Bluetooth partnership with this computer. See [Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology](#) for more information on partnerships.
- 10** Select **Sync**.

- 11 When synchronization has finished, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Disconnect Bluetooth**.

Synchronizing over an infrared connection

If your computer has an IR (infrared) port, you can synchronize with your computer wirelessly using the IR port on your smartphone.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

- Make sure your computer is equipped with an IR port.
 - Turn on the feature to receive beamed information on your smartphone (see [Turning on the option to receive beamed information](#)).
- 1 Set up your computer to receive infrared beams. See ActiveSync Help on your computer for details.
 - 2 Point the IR port directly on your smartphone at your computer's IR port.
 - 3 On your smartphone, press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
 - 4 Select **ActiveSync** .

- 5 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Connect via IR**.
- 6 Select **Sync**.

Synchronizing with two computers

You can set up your smartphone to synchronize with up to two computers as well as with Exchange Server 2003 or 2007. When synchronizing with multiple computers, the items that you synchronize appear on all the computers.

For example, if you set up to sync your smartphone with two computers named C1 and C2, when you sync Contacts and Calendar on your smartphone with both computers, you get the following results:

- The contacts and calendar appointments that were on C1 are now also on C2.
- The contacts and calendar appointments that were on C2 are now also on C1.
- The contacts and calendar appointments from both computers are on your smartphone.

NOTE You can synchronize email in a Microsoft® Office Outlook® E-mail account on your smartphone with only one computer.

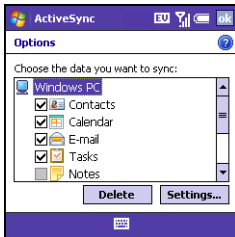
Setting synchronization options

Changing which applications sync

You must select sync options if you want to synchronize notes, pictures, and other types of files.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **ActiveSync** .

- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.






- 4 Do any of the following:
- Check the box next to any items you want to synchronize. If you cannot check a box, you might have to uncheck a box for the same information type elsewhere in the list.
 - Uncheck the box next to any items you want to stop synchronizing.
 - Highlight an item and select **Settings** to customize the settings for that item. Settings are not available for all items.

TIP For detailed information on synchronizing Word documents, Excel spreadsheets, and PowerPoint presentations, see [Synchronizing your Microsoft Office files](#). For detailed information on synchronizing pictures, videos, and music files, see [Synchronizing your media files](#). For information on changing email sync options, see [Changing email download settings: Outlook email accounts](#) or [Changing email download settings: Other email accounts](#).

TIP To end the sync relationship between your smartphone and a computer so that items are no longer synchronized with that computer, select the computer name on the ActiveSync screen on your smartphone, and then select **Delete**.

Stopping synchronization

If you ever need to manually stop synchronization, follow these steps:

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **ActiveSync** .
- 3 Press **Stop**  (left softkey).



Your email

You already know how efficient email is for staying in touch. Now your Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone brings you a new level of convenience: email on the go. Enjoy the ease and speed of communicating with friends, family, and colleagues anywhere you can access the Verizon Wireless data network.

You can send photos to your friends and family, or create Microsoft Word or Excel files and send them to your colleagues. You can also receive attachments to view and edit at your convenience.

Benefits

- Receive photos, sound files, Word and Excel files, and more
- Attach and send files of almost any type
- Save messages from your computer to view at a convenient time

In this chapter

Setting up email	101
Sending and receiving messages	113
Working with email messages	118
Customizing your email settings	123
Working with meeting invitations	130
Sending email messages from within another application.	131

Setting up email

You can use the Messaging application to send and receive email. Before you use your smartphone to send or receive messages, consult Verizon Wireless for pricing and availability of email services and data rate plans.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

- Make sure your phone is on and you're inside a coverage area before you send or receive messages.
- If you want delivery of Outlook email using Microsoft Direct Push, make sure that the IT organization of your company uses Exchange Server 2007, or Exchange Server 2003 with Service Pack 2.

Entering settings for an email account

DID YOU KNOW? You can enter settings for more than one email account; and you can use different email setup applications on your smartphone to enter settings for different accounts, depending on which app best meets your needs.

Email account type	Type of email you can access	How to set up
POP/IMAP	You can obtain email from an ISP or Internet email account such as EarthLink, or from a small business or corporate Internet email account.	See Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Messaging application: Common email providers or Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Messaging application: Other email providers .
Microsoft Exchange server	You can retrieve corporate email using a Microsoft Exchange server. You can access email wirelessly if your company is using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync®.	See Setting up wireless synchronization . You may need to check with your IT organization to ensure that Exchange ActiveSync® is supported and to obtain the configuration settings.
Wireless Sync	You can sync your email and other information when you're away from your computer.	See Setting up a Wireless Sync email account .
Free web-based email	You can access mail from Yahoo!, Hotmail, and other free web-based systems.	Access the email website directly using your smartphone's web browser.


Where can I learn more?

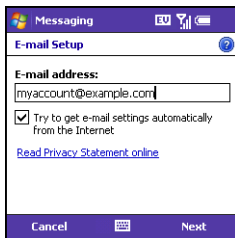
- For help setting up an email account, go to: palm.com/emailsetup.
- For help with email account concepts, go to: kb.palm.com and enter **41456** as the **solution id**.
- For email settings for common ISPs, go to: kb.palm.com and enter **41727** as the **solution id**.

Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Messaging application: Common email providers


Follow this procedure if you have a common email provider such as AOL, Yahoo!, or EarthLink. If you are setting up the Messaging application to work with your corporate email account, or you have a less common email provider, see [Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Messaging application: Other email providers](#).

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Ask your email provider or system administrator for your account username and password if you don't know them.

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Messaging**  (left softkey).
- 3 Select **New E-mail Account**.
- 4 Enter your email address. Check the box to have the setup process get your account settings from the Internet.




- 5 Press **Next**  (right softkey).

- 6 If the setup process finds your account settings, press **Next**  (right softkey).

If the setup process does not find your account settings, see [Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Messaging application: Other email providers](#) and continue with step 7 of that procedure.


- 7 Enter your name and, if you want, change your account display name to something meaningful. For example, if this is your work email account, you can change the display name to Work or your company's name.

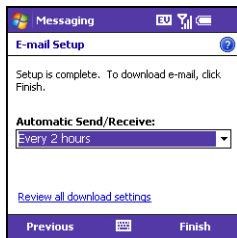


- 8 Press **Next**  (right softkey).
- 9 Verify or enter your account username, and enter your password.

- 10 If you want your password entered automatically, check the **Save password** box. If you want to enter your password each time you access this account, do not check this box.


DID YOU KNOW? Checking the **Save password** box makes it easier to check your email, because you don't have to enter your password each time. Leaving the box unchecked keeps your email more secure, because no one can download messages without entering your password.

- 11 Press **Next**  (right softkey).
- 12 (Optional) Select either of the following:



Automatic Send/Receive: Change the time interval for automatically downloading email, from every 5 minutes to once a day. If you do not want to automatically download messages, select **Manually**.

Review all download settings: Select this option to change download settings; see [Changing email download settings: Outlook email accounts](#) or [Changing email download settings: Other email accounts](#) for information.


- 13** Press **Finish**  (right softkey). If prompted, select **OK** to download messages for this account now.

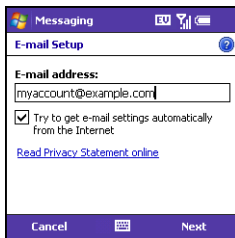
Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Messaging application: Other email providers



You can set up an account in the Messaging application to send and receive email messages using an email account that you have with an Internet service provider (ISP), an email account that you access using a VPN server connection (such as a work account; see [Connecting to a VPN](#)), or any other IMAP or POP email account.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Work with your email provider or system administrator to gather the following info:

- Account type (POP3 or IMAP)
- Mail server name for receiving mail
- Your username and password
- Any special security requirements
- Password security: Found out whether it's OK to store your corporate email password on your smartphone

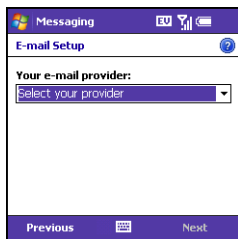
- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Messaging**  (left softkey).
- 3 Select **New E-mail Account**.
- 4 Enter your email address. Check the box if you want the setup process to try to get your account settings from the Internet.



- 5 Press **Next**  (right softkey).
- 6 If you did not check the box in step 4 or the setup process does not find account settings, press **Next**  (right softkey).


If you did check the box and the account setup process finds your account settings, go to [Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Messaging application: Common email providers](#) and continue with step 7 of that procedure.

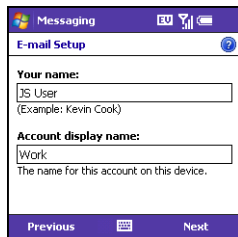
- 7 If prompted, select either of the following as your email provider:




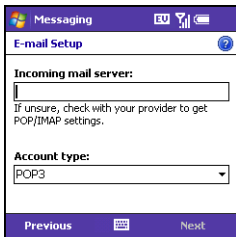
Internet e-mail: Select this option if you access email from any type of email account except a corporate account that uses an Exchange mail server.


Exchange server: Select this option if you access email from a corporate email account using an Exchange server.

- 8 Press **Next**  (right softkey).
- 9 Enter your name and, if you want, change your account display name to something meaningful. For example, if this is your work email account, you can change the display name to Work or your company's name.






- 10 Press **Next**  (right softkey).
- 11 Enter the name of the incoming mail server.



- 12 Select the **Account type** list, and then select **POP3** or **IMAP**.
- 13 Press **Next**  (right softkey).
- 14 Enter your account username and password.
- 15 If you want your password entered automatically, check the **Save password** box. If you want to enter your password each time you access this account, do not check this box.

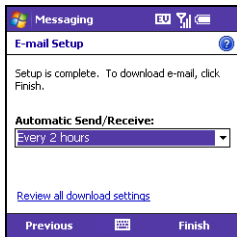
TIP If you found out from your system administrator that it is not OK to store your corporate email password on your smartphone, don't check the **Save password** box.

- 16 Press **Next**  (right softkey).
- 17 If you receive an alert indicating that Verizon Wireless has already customized the outgoing mail server settings, press **OK**  to close the alert, and then press **Next**  (right softkey) on the outgoing mail server settings screen. Do not enter or change anything on the screen.

If you do not receive an alert, go to [Entering outgoing server settings](#).


TIP If you do not receive an alert, and if your incoming mail requires SSL, you set that option with the outgoing server settings. See [Entering outgoing server settings](#) and check the **Require SSL for Incoming e-mail** box on the Advanced Server Settings screen.

18 (Optional) Select either of the following:



Automatic Send/Receive: Change the time interval for automatically downloading email, from every 5 minutes to once a day. If you do not want to automatically download messages, select **Manually**.

Review all download settings: Select this option to change download settings; see [Changing email download settings: Outlook email accounts](#) or [Changing email download settings: Other email accounts](#) for information.

19 Press **Finish**  (right softkey). If prompted, select **OK** to download messages for this account now.

DID YOU KNOW? On the Accounts tab in Messaging Options, an asterisk appears next to the account you most recently created.

TIP To delete an email account or to edit account settings—for example, if you need to change the name of the outgoing mail server—press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Tools > Options**. To delete an account, highlight the account you want, press and hold **Center** on the 5-way, and then select **Delete**. (To delete an Outlook Email account, use the ActiveSync application, not the Messaging application.) To edit an account, select the account and go through the screens to change the settings you want to edit.

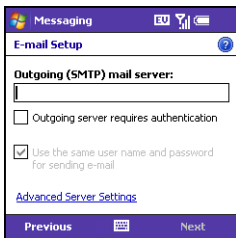
Entering outgoing server settings

If, during account setup, you do not receive an alert saying that Verizon Wireless has set the outgoing mail options, you need to manually enter these settings.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Work with your email provider or system administrator to gather the following info:

- Mail server name for sending mail
- Any special security requirements

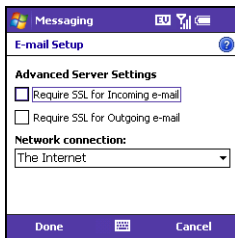
- 1 On the screen for entering outgoing mail settings, select the correct settings for the following:
- 2 Select **Advanced Server Settings**, and then select the correct settings for any of the following:



Outgoing (SMTP) mail server: Enter the server name.

Outgoing server requires authentication: Check the box if your outgoing mail server requires authentication.


Use the same user name and password for sending e-mail: Check the box if the server requires you to use your account username and password when sending email.



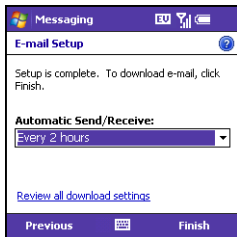
Require SSL for Incoming e-mail: Check the box if your account requires SSL for incoming messages.

Require SSL for Outgoing e-mail: Check the box if your account requires SSL for outgoing messages.

Network connection: Select the type of connection to use for sending and receiving email.


- 3 Press **Done**  (left softkey). On the outgoing mail server screen, press **Next**  (right softkey).

- 4 (Optional) Select either of the following:



Automatic Send/Receive: Change the time interval for automatically downloading email, from every 5 minutes to once a day. If you do not want to automatically download messages, select **Manually**.

Review all download settings: Select this option to change download settings; see [Changing email download settings: Outlook email accounts](#) or [Changing email download settings: Other email accounts](#) for information.

- 5 Press **Finish**  (right softkey). If prompted, select **OK** to download messages for this account now.

Setting up a Wireless Sync email account

Wireless Sync is an email application from Verizon Wireless that lets you sync your email and other information when you're away from your computer. The setup steps for a Wireless Sync account are different depending on whether your company has a Wireless Sync server.





TIP For more info about Wireless Sync, visit wirelessync.vzw.com.

Setting up a Wireless Sync email account if your company does not have a Wireless Sync server


BEFORE YOU BEGIN


- To use Wireless Sync, you must subscribe to the Wireless Sync feature from Verizon Wireless (additional charges may apply).
- If you are accessing a corporate email account, you must install the desktop synchronization software that came with your smartphone (see [Installing ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP](#) or [Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista](#)). You do not need to install the desktop

sync software if you are accessing an Internet email account such as Yahoo! or Gmail.





- Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area.
- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
 - 2 Select **Wireless Sync** .
 - 3 Press **Start**  (left softkey). Wait a few minutes until your smartphone resets and the installation has finished.
 - 4 Leave the **My company has its own Wireless Sync server** box unchecked, and press **Next**  (left softkey).
 - 5 Do one of the following:

If you have a Wireless Sync password: Press **Yes**  (left softkey).

If you do not have a Wireless Sync password: Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **No**. Follow the onscreen instructions to create a password.

If you have forgotten your Wireless Sync password: Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Forgot**. Follow

the onscreen instructions to retrieve your password.

- 6 Enter or confirm your mobile phone number. Enter your **Wireless Sync** password.
- 7 Check the **I agree to the terms and conditions of service** box, and then press **Next**  (left softkey).
- 8 Select your time zone and enter your zip code, and then press **Done**  (left softkey).
- 9 Select the type of email account(s) you want to set up: **Internet** or **Corporate**. Enter your email address and the password you use to access this email account on your computer. Press **Next**  (left softkey).
- 10 For corporate accounts, if you have not already done so, install the desktop synchronization software that came with your smartphone (see [Installing ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP](#) or [Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista](#)).
- 11 When the Congratulations! screen appears, press **Done**  (left softkey).

12 When the First Synchronization dialog box appears, select one of the following:

Refresh: Replaces any existing email, contact, and calendar information on your smartphone with information for the account you just set up.

Merge: Merges any existing email, contact, and calendar information on your smartphone with information for the account you just set up.

TIP For corporate email accounts, the default settings automatically synchronize wirelessly whenever info changes in Microsoft® Office Outlook®. To find out how often you can expect message delivery, contact your system administrator and ask about your company's server settings. For Internet email accounts, the default settings automatically synchronize wirelessly every 30 minutes. To customize your Wireless Sync settings, select **Settings** on the Wireless Sync screen, and then select **When to Sync**.


Setting up a Wireless Sync email account if your company has a Wireless Sync server


BEFORE YOU BEGIN


- Check with your system administrator to find the correct format for your username and password, as well as whether a domain name is required to access email.
- Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area.

1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.




2 Select **Wireless Sync** .

3 Press **Start**  (left softkey). Wait a few minutes until your smartphone resets and the installation has finished.

4 Check the **My company has its own Wireless Sync server** box, and press **Next**  (left softkey).

5 Enter the server name and press **Next**  (left softkey).

6 Enter your account username and password, using the format provided by your system administrator. If required, enter the domain name also.

- 7 Check the **I agree to the terms and conditions of service** box, and then press **Next**  (left softkey).
- 8 Select your time zone and enter your zip code, and then press **Done**  (left softkey).
- 9 When the Congratulations! screen appears, press **Done**  (left softkey).
- 10 When the First Synchronization dialog box appears, select one of the following:

Refresh: Replaces any existing email, contact, and calendar information on your smartphone with information for the account you just set up.

Merge: Merges any existing email, contact, and calendar information on your smartphone with information for the account you just set up.

TIP For corporate email accounts, the default settings automatically synchronize wirelessly whenever info changes in Microsoft® Office Outlook®. To find out how often you can expect message delivery, contact your system administrator and ask about your company's server settings. For Internet email accounts, the default settings automatically synchronize wirelessly every 30 minutes. To customize your Wireless Sync settings, select **Settings** on the Wireless Sync screen, and then select **When to Sync**.

Sending and receiving messages

Selecting which email account to use


If you set up more than one email account on your smartphone (see [Setting up email](#)), you can select the account you want to use to view or send messages in one of two ways:

- By default, when you open the Messaging application, a list of all of your email accounts appears. Select the account you want.


- If you turn off the option to display the list of accounts (see [Customizing your email settings](#)), when you open the Messaging application, the last account you were using is displayed. Press **Left** ◀ or **Right** ▶ to cycle through your accounts until the name of the account you want appears in the title bar.

TIP Also press **Left** or **Right** to switch to a different account after you are finished working in the first account you selected.

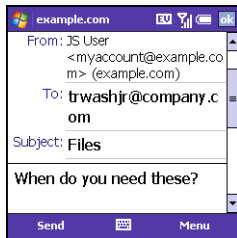
Creating and sending an email message

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Messaging**  (left softkey).

DID YOU KNOW? You can also access the Messaging application from the Start menu.

- 3 Select the email account you want to use to send a message.
- 4 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **New**.



- 5 Enter the recipient's email address. Here are some shortcuts:






- If the recipient's name and email address are in your Contacts list, enter the first few letters of the recipient's first name, last name, or email address, and then select the recipient's name.
- If the recipient's name is in an online address book, you can find the name and add it. See [Using an online address book](#).

DID YOU KNOW? When addressing a message, you can enter the contact's first and last initials separated by a space.

TIP To address a message to multiple recipients, separate the addresses by pressing **Return** or entering a semicolon (;).

- 6 Select **Subject** and enter a title for the message.
- 7 Press **Down** ▼ to go to the body of the message. Enter your message, or press **Menu**  (right softkey), select **My Text**, and then select a predefined phrase you want to insert.
- 8 (Optional) To attach an item to the message, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Insert**. Select the type of item you want to attach, and then select the file or record a voice note.

TIP You can send an email message with a file attached from directly within other applications on your smartphone; see [Sending email messages from within another application](#)

- 9 (Optional) Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and do one or both of the following:
 - Select **Spell Check**. When the spell check is complete, press **OK** .
 - Select **Message Options**. Select the **Priority** list, select a priority setting for the message, and then press **OK** .

- 10 Press **Send**  (left softkey).

TIP To save memory on your smartphone, turn off the option to save sent messages in the Saved folder. In the Inbox, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Tools** > **Options**. Select the **Message** tab, and then uncheck the **Keep copies of sent items in Sent folder** box.

Receiving email messages

How you receive email messages depends on the type of account you are using and how you synchronize:

- If you synchronize wirelessly with your Exchange server using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, new email messages are sent to your smartphone when they appear on the server, according to the schedule you set up

(see [Setting the synchronization schedule](#)), or when you manually initiate a sync (see [Initiating a wireless sync manually](#)).

TIP If you sync email with Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 or 2007, you can synchronize messages in subfolders you create. In the Inbox, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Tools > Manage Folders**. Folders containing subfolders display a +. Select the + to view the subfolders. Check the box to the left of any subfolder you want to sync.



TIP If you synchronize email with Microsoft Exchange Server 2007, and you receive a message containing a link to a document on SharePoint or an internal file server, you can view the document by selecting the link.

- If you use desktop sync software to synchronize your smartphone with your computer, messages in Outlook on your computer are transferred to your smartphone when you connect your computer and your smartphone (see [Connecting your smartphone to your computer](#)).
- For all other types of accounts, including ISP accounts and accounts

you access using a VPN server connection (typically a work account; see [Connecting to a VPN](#)), message retrieval depends on the option you chose from the Automatic Send/Receive list during account setup (see [Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Messaging application: Common email providers](#) or [Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Messaging application: Other email providers](#)), as follows:

If you chose a time interval: Your smartphone automatically checks for and downloads new messages according to that interval.

If you chose Manually: Follow these steps to send and receive messages:

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Messaging**  (left softkey).
- 3 Select the email account containing the messages you want to view.
- 4 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Send/Receive** to synchronize your smartphone with your email server.

TIP Partially downloaded messages appear in the message list with a partial envelope icon to the left of the subject. To view the full message, either press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Download Message**, or open the message and select **Get the rest of this message**.

DID YOU KNOW? You can view messages sent as HTML with the HTML formatting intact.

Receiving attachments




If you synchronize email with Exchange Server 2007, attachments are downloaded automatically when you download a message. Simply select the attachment name to open it. If you do not synchronize email with Exchange Server 2003, follow these steps to download attachments.

- 1 Scroll to the attachment name (below the subject) to highlight it. This marks it for download.
- 2 Synchronize the email account that contains the message, as described in the previous sections.
- 3 Scroll to and select the attachment name (below the subject) to open the attachment.

DID YOU KNOW? You can receive and open attachments in a number of different formats, including PDF. PDF file attachments open in PDF Viewer on your smartphone (see [PDF Viewer](#)).

TIP To store attachments on an expansion card, insert the card into your smartphone's expansion card slot, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Tools > Options**. Select **Storage** and check the **When available, use this storage card to store attachments** box.





If you are synchronizing with Outlook on your computer and want to download attachments automatically, do the following:

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **ActiveSync** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.
- 4 Select **E-mail**, and then select **Settings**.
- 5 Check the **Include file attachments** box.
- 6 (Optional) To automatically download attachments up to a certain size only,

check the **Only if smaller than** box and enter the maximum attachment size.

- 7 Press **OK** .

To automatically download attachments from an IMAP4 email account (typically an ISP account) or an account that you access using a VPN server connection (typically a work account; see [Connecting to a VPN](#)), do the following:

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Messaging**  (left softkey).
- 3 Do one of the following:
 - If the account list is displayed, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.
 - If the message list for a specific account is displayed, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Tools > Options**.
- 4 On the Accounts tab, select the IMAP4 account name.
- 5 Press **Next**  (right softkey) until you reach Server information, and then select **Options**.
- 6 Press **Next** twice, and then select either **Get full copy of messages** and **When getting full copy, get**



attachments or **Entire message**, depending on the option displayed.

DID YOU KNOW? Embedded images and objects cannot be received as attachments, unless you have an IMAP4 email account with TNEF disabled. Note that TNEF must be enabled to receive meeting requests.

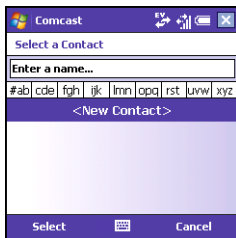
Working with email messages

Adding a contact from an email message

You can add a contact name or email address to your Contacts list directly from the To, cc, or bcc field of an email message. You can select the name or address from either an outgoing or an incoming message, and you can either create a new contact or add the information to an existing contact.

- 1 In an open message, highlight the name or address of the contact you want to add.
- 2 Press **Center** .
- 3 Press **Save**  (left softkey).

- 4 Select **<New Contact>** to create a new contact entry for this name or address, or select an existing contact to add the name or address to that entry.



- 5 Enter or edit the contact information.
6 Press **Save** (left softkey).

Adding an online address book

Many email servers, including servers running Exchange Server, can verify names with an online address book, also called a directory service or a Global Address List. After you create and enable an email account, the Messaging application checks your contacts list and then the directory service to verify names that you enter in the To, cc, and bcc fields.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Do the following:

- Ask your system administrator for the name of the directory service and the server, and whether authentication is required for accessing an online address book.
 - If your company is using Exchange Server 2007, or Exchange Server 2003 upgraded to Service Pack 2, you must first synchronize with the Exchange server to enable the Global Address List to find a contact.
- 1 In the message list, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Tools > Options**.
 - 2 Select the **Address** tab.
 - 3 Select the address book you want to check for email addresses, and then select **Add**.
 - 4 Enter the name of the directory service.
 - 5 Enter the server name.
 - 6 If your server requires authentication, check the box and enter your username and password.

- 7 (Optional) Check the **Check name against this server** box to enable this directory service.
- 8 Select **OK**.




TIP To delete a directory service, highlight it, press and hold **Center** on the 5-way, and select **Delete**.

Using an online address book

You can access contact information, such as an email address or phone number, from your organization's online address book or Global Address List (GAL). To access a GAL, make sure you are accessing either Exchange Server 2007, or Exchange Server 2003 upgraded to Service Pack 2. This feature is useful only if you know the exact name as it appears in the directory.

DID YOU KNOW? You can use the Global Address List to find a contact. In Contacts, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Company Directory**. When sending a meeting request, select **Attendees**, press **Menu** (right softkey), and then select **Company Directory**.


BEFORE YOU BEGIN Add access to an online address book to your smartphone (see [Adding an online address book](#)).

- 1 In a new message, select the **To** field.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Add Recipient**.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Company Directory**.
- 4 Enter the contact name as it appears in the directory and press **Find**  (left softkey). You must spell the contact name correctly.

TIP When you sync with Outlook on your computer, disable your online address books to avoid errors. Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Tools > Options**. Select **Address**, select each online address book, and then uncheck the **Check name against this server** box. Be sure to turn this option back on if you synchronize other email accounts.


Finding messages


You can find messages containing a specific word or phrase. The find feature searches names, email addresses, and subject lines.

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Messaging**  (left softkey).
- 3 Select the account you want.
- 4 Begin typing the word or phrase you want to find. The list display changes to show only those messages containing the letters you have entered.
- 5 Continue entering letters to narrow the display until the message you want appears.

DID YOU KNOW? If you synchronize with Microsoft Outlook 2007, you can also find messages stored on your mail server.

Replying to a message



- 1 Open the message to which you want to reply.
- 2 Press **Reply**  (left softkey).
- 3 Address the message and enter any text you want to add.

- 4 (Optional) Select **Edit sender's message** to edit the original sender's message text that you include in your reply.
- 5 Press **Send**  (left softkey).

DID YOU KNOW? If you reply to a message sent as HTML, the reply is sent in HTML also.

TIP To reply to both the sender and all other addressees, open the message, press **Menu** (right softkey), and then select **Reply > Reply All**.

Forwarding a message

- 1 Open the message you want to forward.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Reply > Forward**.
- 3 Address the message and enter any text you want to add.
- 4 Press **Send**  (left softkey).


Deleting messages

You can delete a message you are reading, or you can delete one or more messages from the message list.

To delete a message you are reading:

- Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Delete**.

To delete messages from the message list:

- 1 Highlight the message(s) you want to delete. To highlight multiple messages, tap and drag the stylus across the messages in the list.
- 2 Press **Delete**  (left softkey).
- 3 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Using email shortcuts


You can perform common email tasks by pressing and holding certain keys on the keyboard. Highlight the message you want, and then press and hold any of the following:



Press and hold...	To...
H	View all email shortcuts
A	Reply to the sender of a message and all other addressees
R	Reply to the sender only

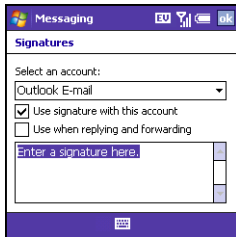
Press and hold...	To...
K	Mark a message read or unread
F	Flag a message
M	Move a message between folders
O	Forward a message
D	Delete a message
L	Fully download a partially downloaded message
S	Synchronize your smartphone with the server to get and send new messages

Adding a signature to your messages


You can use a different signature with each email account.

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Messaging**  (left softkey).

- 3 Do one of the following:
 - If the account list is displayed:** Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.
 - If the message list for a specific account is displayed:** Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Tools > Options**.
- 4 On the Accounts tab, select **Signatures**.
- 5 Select the account for which you want to create a signature.




- 6 Check the **Use signature with this account** box to add this signature to new messages you create with this account.


- 7 (Optional) Check the **Use when replying and forwarding** box to add this signature to messages you reply to or forward with this account.
- 8 Highlight the text **Enter a signature here** and enter the signature text you want to use.
- 9 Press **OK** .

Customizing your email settings


Customizing general email settings

When you customize settings for an email account, the options you choose apply to that account only.

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Messaging**  (left softkey).
- 3 Do one of the following:

If the account list is displayed: Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.

If the message list for a specific account is displayed: Press

Menu  (right softkey) and select **Tools > Options**.

- 4 On the Accounts tab, set any of the following options:

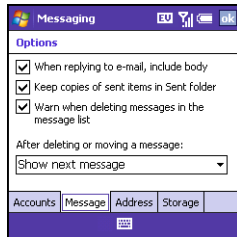


Security: Allows you to specify whether you receive a warning message before you open a URL or file link that is not on your smartphone.

Display account picker when opening Messaging: Specifies whether a list of your email accounts appears when you open the Messaging application, allowing you to select the one you want to use. If the box is unchecked, the Messaging application opens to the last account you used.

TIP If the **Display account picker when opening Messaging** box is unchecked, repeatedly press Left or Right on the 5-way after you open the Messaging application to cycle through your accounts.

- 5 Select the **Message** tab and set any of the following options:



When replying to e-mail, include body: Indicates whether the body of a message you received appears in your response to that message.

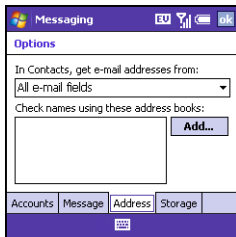
Keep copies of sent items in Sent folder: Indicates whether messages you send are stored in the Sent folder.

Warn when deleting messages in the message list: Specifies whether a confirmation message appears when you delete one or more messages from the message list.

After deleting or moving a message: Specifies what you want to see after you delete or move an email message you are reading: the account Inbox or the next message.

- 6 Select the **Address** tab and set any of the following options:

In Contacts, get e-mail addresses from: Indicates whether you want to check Contacts in addition to any directory services for email addresses.



Check names using these address books: Indicates which directory services you want to check for email addresses.

Add: Enables you to add directory services to the list of online address books.

- 7 Select the **Storage** tab and set any of the following options:



When available, use this storage card to store attachments: Indicates whether you want to automatically store email attachments on an expansion card (sold separately). You must have a card inserted in your smartphone's expansion card slot to select this option.

Empty deleted items: Select **Immediately** to have the Deleted folder emptied anytime you delete a message. Select **On connect/disconnect** to have the folder deleted anytime you open or quit the Messaging application. Select **Manually** to manually empty the Deleted folder.

TIP If you choose to manually empty the Deleted folder, you delete messages from this folder in the same way that you delete any other messages (see [Deleting messages](#)).


8 Press **OK** .

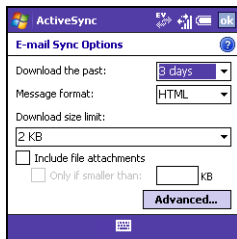
Changing email download settings: Outlook email accounts

You can customize the download options for an Outlook email account you synchronize with your computer or with an Exchange server.

NOTE To change options for other types of email accounts, see [Changing email download settings: Other email accounts](#).

- 1 Press **Start** , select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **ActiveSync** .

- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.
- 4 Under your sync method (Microsoft Exchange or Windows PC), highlight **E-mail** and select **Settings**.
- 5 Select any of the following options:



Download the past: Specifies the number of days' worth of email to be retrieved for each automatic or manual sync.

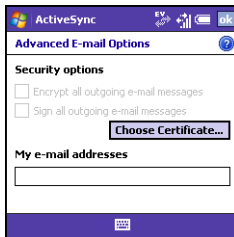
Message format: Specifies the format for sending and receiving messages. If you select HTML, messages sent to you as HTML are received with their formatting intact. If you select Plain Text, all messages are received as plain text.

Download size limit: Specifies the size of an incoming message that is automatically downloaded. For any message that exceeds this size, you must manually download the rest of the message. Selecting a higher limit means more of your messages are fully downloaded, but message retrieval might take longer. You can also choose to download message headers only, regardless of size.

Include file attachments: Specifies whether to download attached files with a message.

Only if smaller than: Specifies the maximum size of attachments that can be downloaded. If an attachment exceeds the maximum size, you must download it manually (see [Receiving attachments](#)).

- 6 (Optional) Select **Advanced**, and then select any of the following options:



Encrypt all outgoing e-mail messages: Specifies whether downloaded messages should be encrypted for extra security.

Sign all outgoing e-mail messages: Specifies whether messages should be given a digital signature as an extra security measure.

Choose Certificate: Specifies the certificate to use as a digital signature.


My e-mail addresses: Indicates the addresses to which the security measures should be applied.


- 7 Press **OK** .


Changing email download settings: Other email accounts


You can customize the download options for each email account that you have with an Internet service provider (ISP) or that you access using a VPN server connection (typically a work account).

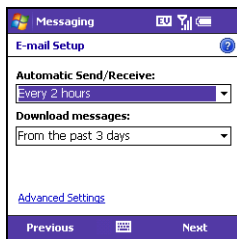
NOTE To change options for a Microsoft Office Outlook account, see [Changing email download settings: Outlook email accounts](#).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Messaging**  (left softkey).
- 3 Do one of the following:

If the account list is displayed: Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.

If the message list for a specific account is displayed: Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Tools > Options**.

- 4 Select the email account you want.
- 5 Press **Next**  (right softkey) until the following screen is displayed.



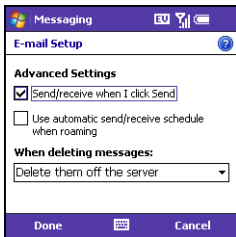
- 6 Select either of the following:

Automatic Send/Receive: Specifies the time interval for automatically downloading email, from every 5 minutes to once a day. If you do not want to automatically download messages, select **Manually**.

Download messages: Specifies the number of days' worth of email to be retrieved for each automatic or manual retrieval.

TIP To save memory, limit the number of emails that are downloaded to your smartphone by selecting a smaller time interval for how many days' worth of messages are downloaded.

- 7 Select **Advanced Settings**, and then select any of the following:



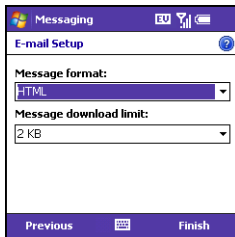
Send/receive when I click Send:

Specifies whether you can manually send and receive messages, in addition to automatically downloading them.

Use automatic send/receive schedule when roaming: Specifies whether automatic downloading takes place when you are roaming. This may result in higher connection charges than downloading while in your home network.

When deleting messages: Specifies whether messages should be deleted from the mail server when you delete them on your smartphone, or whether messages you delete on your smartphone should remain on the server.

- 8 Press **Done** (left softkey).
 9 Press **Next** (right softkey).
 10 Select either of the following:



Message format: Specifies the format for sending and receiving messages. If you select HTML, messages sent to you as HTML are received with their formatting intact. If you select Plain Text, all messages are received as plain text.

DID YOU KNOW? Messages sent to you as plain text are always received as plain text, even if you select HTML.

Message download limit: Specifies the size of an incoming message that is automatically downloaded. For any message that exceeds this size, you must manually download the rest of the message. Selecting a higher limit means more of your messages are fully downloaded, but message retrieval might take longer. You can also choose to download message headers only, regardless of size.

11 Press **Finish**  (right softkey).



Working with meeting invitations


You can receive meeting invitations on your smartphone in the same way that you receive email messages.


NOTE Use the Calendar application to create meeting invitations on your smartphone; see [Sending a meeting request](#).

Here are the key features of meeting invitations:

- Meeting invitations appear on your smartphone in the Messaging application, not in the Calendar application.
- From within the Messaging application, you can accept, decline, or tentatively accept a meeting invitation.
- If you accept an invitation, the meeting shows up as an appointment in the Calendar application.
- You can reply to and forward meeting invitations in the same way as email messages.

- 1** Go to your Today screen.
- 2** Press **Messaging**  (left softkey).
- 3** Select the account you want.
- 4** Select a meeting invitation to open it. Meeting invitations are displayed with this icon: .

- 5 To accept the invitation, press **Accept**  (left softkey), select whether to edit (include comments with) your response, and then select **OK**.

To decline or tentatively accept the invitation, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Decline** or **Tentative**.

TIP If you receive an updated meeting invitation, you can again choose to accept, decline, or tentatively accept. If you receive a meeting cancellation, you don't need to do anything.

Sending email messages from within another application

You can send files such as pictures, videos, and ringtones as attachments to email messages (see [Creating and sending an email message](#)).

You can send certain files as attachments from within the application where the file is created or stored. For example, if you take a picture with the built-in camera on your smartphone, you can select an option to send the picture as an attachment to an email message. You can also use this feature with videos and sound files. For details, see the chapter on the specific application.



Your text and multimedia messages

If you need to get a short message to a friend or a colleague fast, send a text message from your Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone to their mobile phone or email address.

If you need more than text to express yourself, use multimedia messaging to give your message extra impact by adding a photo, video, or sound file.

Benefits

- Enjoy quick communication
- Use text messaging to chat with friends
- Be as simple or as creative as you want

In this chapter

Sending and receiving text and multimedia messages 135

Setting message preferences 142

Sending and receiving text and multimedia messages



You can use the Messaging application to send and receive brief text messages (SMS) and multimedia messages (MMS).

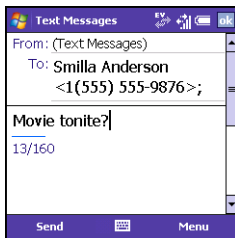
Creating and sending a text message




Each text message can have up to 160 characters. Write the message yourself or save time by using predefined My Text phrases, such as “Call me” or “On my way.” You can also create your own predefined phrases and add them to My Text.

DID YOU KNOW? You can send and receive text messages even while you are on a phone call. This is easiest when using a hands-free headset or the speakerphone.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN


- Before you use your smartphone to send or receive messages, consult Verizon Wireless for pricing and availability of text and multimedia messaging services.
 - Make sure that your phone is on and that you’re inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).
- 1 Go to your Today screen.
 - 2 Press **Messaging**  (left softkey).
 - 3 Select **Text Messages**.
 - 4 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **New**.
 - 5 Enter the recipient’s name, mobile phone number, or email address. Here are some shortcuts:



- If the recipient's name and mobile number are in your Contacts list, type the first few letters of the first or last name or simply enter the first initial, followed by a space, and then the last initial to find a name.
- Press **Center**  to view a list of recently used addresses, and select the recipient from the list. Select **Add Recipient** to add a recipient from your Contacts list.
- If the recipient's name is in an online address book, press **Center** , enter the name, press **Menu**  (right softkey), and then select **Company Directory**. Select the name, and then select either the phone number or the email address. For more information, see [Using an online address book](#).
- If the recipient's name and mobile number are not in your Contacts list, enter the full mobile number or email address.



TIP To address a message to multiple recipients, separate the addresses by pressing **Return** or entering a semicolon (;). You can send a message to up to 20 addresses.

TIP To send a message to a different number for a contact, select the contact in the To field, and then edit the number that appears in the box directly below the contact number. You can also select a number by pressing **Center** on the 5-way, and then edit it.

- 6 Enter your message, or press **Menu**  (right softkey), select **My Text**, and then select a predefined phrase you want to insert.

TIP To add a new My Text phrase, select **Edit My Text Messages** in the list.

TIP Some symbols can't be used in text messages. Invalid characters are automatically replaced by the Messaging application.

- 7 (Optional) Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Spell Check**.
- 8 Press **Send**  (left softkey).

Creating and sending a multimedia message

Multimedia messages consist of pictures, videos, text, and sounds presented as one or more slides. You can include any of the following items:

Ringtones

- MIDI

Sound clips

- AMR
- QCELP

Pictures



- JPEG
- GIF
- WBMP

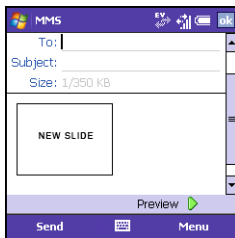
Videos




- 3GPP
- 3GPP2
- MPEG4

BEFORE YOU BEGIN


- Before you use your smartphone to send or receive messages, consult Verizon Wireless for pricing and availability of text and multimedia messaging services.
- Make sure that your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Messaging**  (left softkey).
- 3 Select **MMS**.
- 4 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **New**.



- 5 Enter the recipient's mobile phone number or email address. Here are some shortcuts:
 - If the recipient's name and mobile number are in your Contacts list, type the first few letters of the first or last name or simply enter the first initial, followed by a space, and then the last initial to find a name.
 - Press **Center**  to view a list of recently used addresses, and select the recipient from the list. Select **Add Recipient** to add a recipient from your Contacts list.
 - If the recipient's name is in an online address book, press **Center** , enter the name, press **Menu** , and then select **Company Directory**. Select the name, and then select either the phone number or the email address. For more information, see [Using an online address book](#).
 - If the recipient's name and mobile number are not in your Contacts list, enter the full mobile number or email address.
- 6 Select **Subject** and enter a title for the message.
- 7 Select **New Slide**.
- 8 Select **Add Picture/Video**, and then select one of the following:
 - Add Picture:** Lets you insert a picture. You can take the picture with the built-in camera or insert an existing picture.
 - Add Video:** Lets you insert a video. You can capture a video with the built-in camera or insert an existing video clip. If you insert a video, you cannot add any more pictures, videos, or sounds to that message.
 - Add Sound:** Lets you record a message, such as a voice caption for a picture, or insert an existing sound, such as a ringtone. You can add one sound per slide; to send more than one sound in a message, add another slide to your message. If you capture a picture with the built-in camera and save it with a voice caption, the voice caption does not count as a sound file.
- 9 Select **Add Text** and enter a text caption or message for the item you inserted.


TIP To add a new My Text phrase, select **Edit My Text Messages** in the list.

10 Tap **Next**  and repeat steps 8–9 to add other items in this message.

DID YOU KNOW? A multimedia message can contain up to 350KB and can consist of multiple items (up to 16 slides).

TIP While creating a message, select the arrows at the bottom of the screen to move between slides.

11 (Optional) Tap **Preview**  to view the message as the recipient will see it.

12 After you finish creating the message, press **OK** .

13 Press **Send**  (left softkey).

Receiving text and multimedia messages

When your phone is on and you are in a wireless coverage area, you automatically receive new text messages. For multimedia messages, you can set your smartphone to automatically download new messages or to notify you that messages are ready to be downloaded.

You can also set your smartphone to notify you when a new text or multimedia message arrives.

DID YOU KNOW? Message notifications include the message text unless you have turned on privacy mode (see [Customizing text messages](#)). If privacy mode is on, the notification states only the type of incoming message.

The new message notification may include any of the following options:

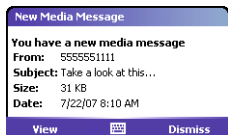
View: Opens the message so you can view its full contents.

Download: Downloads the rest of the message from the server.

Reply: Opens a message addressed to the sender's phone number.

Dismiss: Closes the notification and puts the message in your Inbox.


Menu: Opens a menu where you can select other options.





If you have multiple messages, the notification includes the number of messages and the type (text or multimedia).



Viewing/playing a message


You can open a message from a notification or from the Inbox of the Messaging application. When you open a multimedia message, playback starts automatically.

- 1 Do one of the following to open the message:
 - Press **Start**  and select **Messaging**. Select **MMS**. From the Inbox, select the message you want to view.
 - From a notification, select **View**.


- 2 For a multimedia message, do any of the following:


Go the previous or next slide: Tap the **previous**  icon or the **next**  icon.


Pause or resume playback: Tap the **pause**  icon or the **play**  icon.

Save the item that is playing: Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Save**.

Go to the top of the message: Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Message Overview**.

Reply to the message: Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Reply** or **Reply All**.

Call the sender: Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Call Sender**.


Save the message as a template for other messages: Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Save as Template**.

DID YOU KNOW? When viewing a multimedia message containing multiple slides, you can press **Right** on the 5-way to move to the next slide, or press **Left** on the 5-way to move to the previous slide.


- 3 Press **OK** .

Sorting your messages


You can sort the messages in any folder by date or by sender.

- 1 Go to the Inbox or other folder you want to sort.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Sort by**.
- 3 Select **Message Type**, **From**, **Received**, or **Subject**.

Deleting a single message

- 1 Go to the Inbox or other folder containing the message you want to delete.
- 2 Highlight the message.
- 3 Press **Delete**  (left softkey).
- 4 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.



Deleting multiple messages

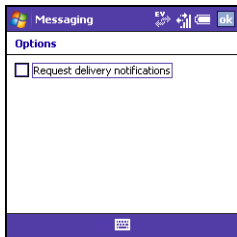
- 1 Go to the Inbox or other folder containing the messages you want to delete.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Tools > Clear "Text Messages"** or **Tools > Clear "MMS."**
- 3 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.


Setting message preferences

You can set options for both text and multimedia messages in the Messaging application. The settings you select apply to all your text or multimedia messages.



Customizing text messages

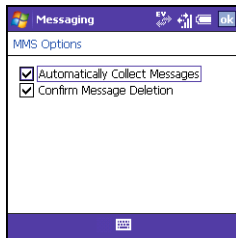
- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Messaging**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.
- 3 Select **Text Messages**.



- 4 Check the **Request delivery notifications** box to receive an alert when a text messages has been delivered.
- 5 Press **OK** .

Customizing multimedia messages

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Messaging**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.
- 3 Select **MMS**.




- 4 Select either of the following options:

Automatically Collect Messages:

Specifies that you want the Messaging application to automatically download multimedia messages. If the box is unchecked, you must manually download new incoming multimedia messages.

Confirm message deletion: Indicates whether you want to receive an alert confirming that you want to delete a multimedia message.

- 5 Press **OK** .



Your connections to the web and wireless devices

You use the web for so many things: finding driving directions, getting news, buying gifts, checking web-based email. Now, with the Verizon Wireless network and the web browser on your Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone, you can take the web with you almost anywhere you go.

The built-in Bluetooth® wireless technology on your smartphone helps you easily set up wireless connections to a number of devices, so you can enjoy the convenience of cable-free connectivity. You can also use your smartphone to connect your computer to the Internet and to share contacts or your favorite photos with other people.

Benefits

- Carry the web with you
- Store web pages for offline viewing
- Connect to Bluetooth headsets and car kits
- Connect your computer to the Internet through your smartphone

In this chapter

Browsing the web	147
Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology	154
Using your device as a wireless modem	158

Browsing the web

Internet Explorer Mobile provides quick and easy access to web pages. You can view most sites on your smartphone that you can view on your computer, including those with security and advanced features, such as JavaScript and frames.

Internet Explorer Mobile supports JavaScript, Secure Sockets Layer (SSL), and cookies, but does not support plug-ins (Flash, Shockwave, VBScript, WML script, and so on) or Java applets.

DID YOU KNOW? The security certificates and 128-bit SSL strong encryption enable you to browse secure sites for tasks such as online shopping, banking, and email. Remember, some secure sites also require a specific browser and may not work with Internet Explorer Mobile. Ask the organization for an alternate access point that is compatible with Internet Explorer Mobile.



BEFORE YOU BEGIN Do the following:

- Be sure to subscribe to data services from Verizon Wireless. This is necessary for browsing the web.
- Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).

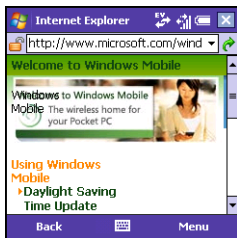
Viewing a web page

By default, Internet Explorer Mobile scales web page content to fit your smartphone screen so that you can view most of the information without scrolling left or right.

DID YOU KNOW? You can also start a web search from your Today screen by selecting the Web search field, entering the item you want to find, and then pressing **Center** on the 5-way.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Internet Explorer**.
- 2 Highlight the address line, enter the address of the web page you want to view, and then press **Center** . To return to a recently viewed page, select the address line list, and then select the web address.

DID YOU KNOW? If you browse to a secure web page, the lock icon in the address line appears closed instead of open.



- 3 Press **Menu** (right softkey), select **View**, and then select one of the following:

One Column: Arranges web pages into one column that is as wide as the screen, so that you don't have to scroll horizontally.

Fit To Screen: Maintains a layout similar to what you see on a desktop computer, but makes items smaller and arranges the content so that you can see most of it without scrolling horizontally.

Desktop: Keeps the same layout and size as on a desktop computer, which requires both horizontal and vertical scrolling.

Full Screen: Hides the status and navigation areas and fills the entire screen with the web page. To exit full screen mode, press (right softkey), or tap and hold anywhere on the screen and uncheck **Full Screen**.

Show Pictures: Shows or hides pictures on web pages. Hiding pictures speeds up the time it takes to load pages.

Navigating web pages

Here are some tips on viewing web pages and moving around in them:

- To view the previous page, press **Back** (left softkey) or **Backspace**.
- To refresh the page with the latest content from the Internet, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Refresh**.

- To scroll through the page in One Column View or Default View, press **Up** ▲ or **Down** ▼. In Desktop View, press **Up** ▲, **Down** ▼, **Left** ◀, or **Right** ▶ to scroll in all directions.
 - To follow a link to another web page press **Up** ▲ or **Down** ▼ to highlight the link, and then press **Center** ○ to go to the selected page. You can also tap the link on the screen with the stylus.
 - To send email from a web page, select the address link. You need to configure an email application on your smartphone before you can use this feature (see [Your email](#)).
 - To adjust the size of the text on web pages, press **Menu** ☰ (right softkey), select **View** > **Text Size**, and then select the size you want.
 - To view a web page's properties, press **Menu** ☰ (right softkey) and select **Tools** > **Properties**.
 - To view each item in a list, select the list and scroll using **Up** ▲ or **Down** ▼.
- In a list, press **Left** ◀ or **Right** ▶ to cycle between items, and then press **Center** ○ to accept the change.
 - In a form, such as a browser search field, press **Center** ○ to interact with the form, and then press **Center** ○ to stop interacting with the form.
- 4 Press **OK** Ⓞ to close Internet Explorer Mobile.

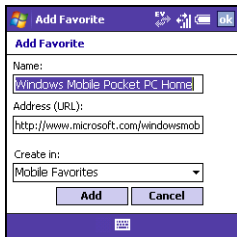
TIP To send a link, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Tools** > **Send Link**. Select the option you want to use to send the link: SMS (text message), MMS (multimedia message), or an email account.

Creating a favorite

Favorites let you bookmark a web page so that you can instantly access it without entering the web address.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Create the folders where you want to store your favorites first. After you create a favorite, you can't move it to another folder (see [Organizing your favorites](#)).

- 1 Go to the page you want to mark as a favorite.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Add to Favorites**.



- 3 (Optional) Select **Name** and enter a different description.
- 4 (Optional) Select **Create in**, and then select the folder where you want to store the favorite.
- 5 Select **Add**.

TIP To delete a favorite or folder, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Favorites**. Select the **Add/Delete** tab, highlight the item you want to delete, and then select **Delete**. Select **Yes** to confirm deletion and press **OK**.

Viewing a favorite

- 1 Press **Start** and select **Internet Explorer**.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Favorites**.
- 3 Select the page you want to view in the list.

Organizing your favorites


You can create folders to organize your favorites. For example, you can store travel links in one folder, stock links in another, and business links in a third folder.


- 1 Press **Start** and select **Internet Explorer**.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Favorites**.
- 3 Select the **Add/Delete** tab.
- 4 Select **New Folder**.
- 5 Enter a name for this folder, and then select **Add**.
- 6 Press **OK**.

Downloading files and images from a web page

You can download files that are usable on your smartphone, such as new applications, MIDI ringtones, or pictures.

DID YOU KNOW? You can select the Downloads favorite to access the Verizon Wireless downloads page.


- 1 Go to the page that contains the link to the file you want to download.
- 2 Do either of the following:
 - To download a file:** Press **Left** ◀ or **Right** ▶ to highlight the link to the file. Press **Center** , and then select **Save As**.
 - To download an image:** Tap and hold on the image, select **Save Image**, and then select **Save As**.
- 3 Select **Name** and enter a new name for the file.

- 4 Select the **Folder** list, and then select the folder where you want to save the file.
- 5 Select the **Location** list, and then select where you want to store the file: **Main memory** or **Storage card**. The Storage card option appears only if you have an expansion card (sold separately) inserted into your smartphone.
- 6 Press **OK** .

Copying text from a web page

You can copy text from a web page and paste it in other applications.

TIP You can copy the text from the entire web page. Tap and hold on the page, and then tap **Select All Text**. Tap and hold on the page again, and then tap **Copy**.

- 1 Use the stylus to highlight the text you want to copy.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Edit** > **Copy**.

- 3 Go to the application in which you want to paste, and then position the cursor where you want to paste the text.
- 4 Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Edit > Paste**.

TIP If Internet Explorer Mobile does not recognize a phone number as dialable, you can copy the phone number (as text) and paste it into the phone Dial Pad.

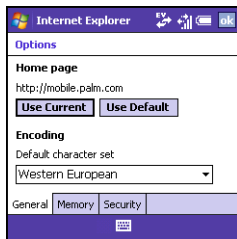
Returning to recently viewed pages

The History list stores the addresses of the pages you visited recently.

- 1 Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **History**.
- 2 (Optional) Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select how you want to sort the History list.
- 3 Select the web page you want to view.

Customizing your Internet Explorer Mobile settings

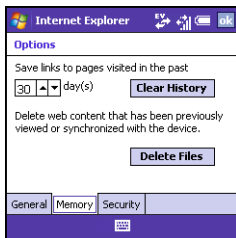
- 1 Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Tools > Options**.
- 2 On the General tab, set any of the following options:



Home page: Sets the page that appears when you open Internet Explorer Mobile. To use the page you were on when you opened the menu, select **Use Current**. To select the original home page, select **Use Default**.

Encoding: Sets the character set for the web pages you view.

- 3 Select the **Memory** tab and set any of the following options:



Save links to pages visited in the past: Sets how many days of activity the History list stores.

Clear History: Empties the History list.

Delete Files: Removes web files that you previously viewed synchronized with your computer.

- 4 Select the **Security** tab and set any of the following options:

Allow cookies: Sets whether your smartphone accepts cookies (small files containing info about your identity and preferences). The page sends the file and stores it on your smartphone.



Clear Cookies: Deletes any cookies stored on your smartphone.

Warn when changing to a page that is not secure: Sets whether a message appears when you switch from a secure page to one that is not secure.

Warn when page content is blocked due to security settings: Sets whether a message appears when you attempt to open a page that does not meet the security standards associated with your smartphone.

- 5 Press **OK** .

Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology

With the Bluetooth® wireless technology on your smartphone, you can connect to a number of Bluetooth devices such as a headset or hands-free car kit, as well as to other phones, handhelds, or piconets. When you connect to another device, you create a partnership (also referred to by terms such as *trusted pair*, *trusted device*, or *pairing*) with that device. If your computer is enabled with Bluetooth wireless technology, you can also synchronize wirelessly or use your phone as a wireless modem.


KEY TERM Partnership Two devices—for example, your smartphone and a hands-free device—that can connect because each device finds the same passkey on the other device. After you form a partnership with a device, you don't need to enter a passkey to connect with that device again.

You can create a list of Bluetooth devices that you trust to communicate with your smartphone. When communicating with trusted devices, your smartphone skips the discovery process and creates a secure link as long as the device is within range. Bluetooth range is up to about 30 feet (10 meters) in ideal conditions. Performance and range are affected by physical obstacles, radio interference from nearby electronic equipment, and other factors.

When you configure a headset (see [Connecting to a Bluetooth® hands-free device](#)), the headset is automatically added to your trusted device list. Follow the steps in this section to add other devices, such as your computer, to your trusted device list.

DID YOU KNOW? Check your battery level before establishing a Bluetooth connection. If the battery level is low, you can't make a Bluetooth connection.

Entering basic Bluetooth settings

- 1 Go to your Today screen and tap **Bluetooth** .
- 2 Select the **Mode** tab and check the **Turn on Bluetooth** box.







- 3 Check or uncheck the **Make the device visible to other devices** box.


Check this box to allow Bluetooth devices that are not on your Trusted Device list to request a connection with your device. Your device remains accessible to other devices until you uncheck the box.

The Bluetooth status icon

The Bluetooth icon on your Today screen indicates the status of the Bluetooth feature:

-  Bluetooth off
-  Bluetooth on
-  Connected to a Bluetooth device
-  Call in progress with a Bluetooth headset or car kit

Requesting a connection with another Bluetooth device

- 1 Go to your Today screen and tap Bluetooth .
- 2 Select the **Mode** tab and check the **Turn on Bluetooth** box.

- 3 Select the **Devices** tab, and then select **Add new device**.



- 4 Wait for your smartphone to search for devices and to display the device list.



- 5 Select the device with which you want to connect, and then press **Next** (right softkey).

- 6 Enter an alphanumeric passkey between 1 and 16 characters long, and then press **Next** (right softkey).





IMPORTANT Some hands-free devices have a predefined passkey. If your device has a predefined passkey, you can find it in the documentation for that device. Other devices provide a screen where you enter a passkey that you make up. In either case, you must use the same passkey on both your smartphone and the other device. We recommend that where possible, you make up a passkey of 16 alphanumeric characters (letters and numerals only) to improve the security of your smartphone. The longer the passkey, the more difficult it is for the passkey to be deciphered.

- 7 If the passkey is not built-in, enter the same passkey on the other Bluetooth device.
- 8 (Optional) Check the box next to any service for which you want to use your other Bluetooth device.
- 9 Press **Finish** (right softkey).
- 10 Press **OK**.

You can now communicate with this device whenever it is within range and the Bluetooth feature on your smartphone is turned on. The range varies greatly depending on environmental factors. The maximum is about 30 feet (10 meters).

TIP To delete the established partnership with a device, go to the Bluetooth Settings screen and select the **Devices** tab. Highlight the connection you want to remove, press and hold **Center** on the 5-way, and then select **Delete**. Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion. The deleted device can no longer automatically connect with your smartphone.

Accepting a connection from another Bluetooth device

- 1 Go to your Today screen and tap **Bluetooth** .
- 2 Select the **Mode** tab and check the **Turn on Bluetooth** box.
- 3 If you have already set up a partnership with the transmitting device, your smartphone is ready to receive the info. Skip to step 8.
If you haven't set up a connection, check the **Make this device visible to other devices** box to let the device find your smartphone and request a connection.
- 4 When prompted to add this device, select **Yes**.
- 5 Enter the same passkey on your smartphone and on the Bluetooth device.
- 6 (Optional) To give the partnership a more meaningful name, select **Display Name** and enter a new name.
- 7 Press **Finish**  (right softkey).
- 8 When your smartphone is receiving info, a notification tells you that a transmission is in progress. To stop the transmission, press **Cancel**  (right softkey). To close the notification, press **Hide**  (left softkey).

Using your device as a wireless modem

Your smartphone's data capabilities enable you to use your smartphone as a wireless modem for your laptop computer. Use this feature to send and receive email, browse the Internet, and access your company's network if you do not have another Internet connection for your laptop—for example, when working remotely at airports and other locations.



You can use your device as a wireless modem in one of two ways:

- Connect your smartphone to your computer using the USB sync cable.
- If your computer is enabled with Bluetooth wireless technology, set up your smartphone as a wireless modem using the built-in Bluetooth technology.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN


- To use this service, you must have access to a wireless data network, and a separate data service plan may also be required. Contact Verizon Wireless for more information.
- In addition, you must have a desktop application that supports this feature. Verizon Wireless may provide a dedicated software application, or visit the following web site for additional instructions from Palm: palm.com/us/support/treo/treo700wxverizon/.

Preparing your smartphone for a wireless modem connection using a USB cable

- 1 On your smartphone, press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Modem Link** .

- 3 If an alert appears, press **OK** .



- 4 Select the **Connection** list, and then select **USB**.
- 5 Press **Activate**  (left softkey).
- 6 After you have connected, on your computer, open your web browser to confirm that you can connect to the Internet.

TIP You cannot sync your smartphone with your computer when **Modem Link** is activated. To deactivate Modem Link, complete steps 1–3 and press **Deactivate**.

TIP If you're using your smartphone as a wireless modem to connect to the Internet through a BroadbandAccess connection, the data connection is terminated whenever you receive or make a phone call.

Preparing your computer for a wireless modem connection using a USB cable

To complete the configuration and connect your laptop to the Internet using your smartphone, you must first install the VZAccess application from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD. Insert the CD into your computer's CD drive and select **Add new programs to my desktop PC**.

NOTE Palm does not support wireless modem connections on Mac OS X computers. Third-party solutions may be available, but these solutions are not supported by Palm.

Preparing your computer for a wireless modem connection using Bluetooth technology

BEFORE YOU BEGIN

- Make sure your smartphone is visible (see [Entering basic Bluetooth settings](#)).
- Create a partnership between your smartphone and your computer. We recommend that you initiate the partnership from your smartphone (see [Requesting a connection with another Bluetooth device](#)).

Bluetooth connectivity and setup varies from computer to computer based on your operating system version and the way your computer is enabled with Bluetooth technology.

The instructions that follow are general instructions for setting up a connection with a computer that has a Windows certified Bluetooth device and is running Windows XP SP2.

For instructions on setting up other operating systems or Bluetooth devices, see the documentation that came with the computer and the Bluetooth device.

- 1 On your computer, click **Start** and select **Run**.
- 2 Enter **telephon.cpl**, and then click **OK**.
- 3 On the Modems tab, click **Add** to open the Select Bluetooth Device dialog box.
- 4 Select your smartphone from the list of devices to use as a modem.
- 5 Click **Start > Control Panel > Phone and Modem Options**.
- 6 Enter **#777** as the phone number to dial.
- 7 (Optional) Create an Internet connection by clicking **Start > Control Panel > Network Connections**.
- 8 After you have connected, on your computer, open your web browser to confirm that you can connect to the Internet.



Your photos, videos, and music

Do you have a wallet bulging with photos of friends, family, pets, and your most recent vacation?

Are you tired of carrying both your MP3 player and your phone?

Your Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone solves both problems. You can keep your favorite photos—videos, too—right on your smartphone. And there's no need to carry an expensive MP3 player, because you can play music on your smartphone. Simply transfer songs onto your smartphone or an expansion card (sold separately) and then listen through your stereo headset.

Benefits

- Easily access your favorite people, places, and songs
- Arrange your photos, videos, and songs
- Avoid having to use a separate photo viewer, MP3, CD, or mini-disc player

In this chapter

Synchronizing your media files	163
Camera	164
Pictures & Videos	170
Windows Media Player Mobile	174

Synchronizing your media files

You can synchronize pictures, videos, and music files between your smartphone and your computer so that changes you make show up on both your computer and your smartphone. To synchronize media files, you must first choose Media as one of your synchronization options on your smartphone; see [Changing which applications sync](#).

The procedure for synchronizing media files is different for computers running Windows XP and computers running Windows Vista.

Synchronizing media files: Windows XP

BEFORE YOU BEGIN You must install the current version of ActiveSync® desktop software from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD (see [Installing ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP](#)) and select the option to synchronize media on your smartphone (see [Changing which applications sync](#)).

When you synchronize your smartphone, your pictures and videos are synchronized between your smartphone and your desktop computer. On your computer, you can view the pictures and videos, and you can also send them to friends using your desktop email application.

To find all synchronized pictures and videos on your computer, look in C:\Documents and Settings\\My Documents\Treo My Documents.

You use Windows Media Player to synchronize music files; see [Transferring media files to your smartphone](#).

Synchronizing media files: Windows Vista

BEFORE YOU BEGIN You must install Windows Mobile Device Center from the Windows Getting Started Disc (see [Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista](#)) and select the option to synchronize media on your smartphone (see [Changing which applications sync](#)).

On a computer running Windows Vista, you use Windows Media Player to synchronize all types of media files—pictures, videos, and music files—that are

on your computer to your smartphone. See [Transferring media files to your smartphone](#).

To synchronize pictures and videos from your smartphone to your computer, follow these steps:

- 1 Connect your smartphone to your computer with the **USB sync cable**.
- 2 On your computer, click **Start > All Programs > Windows Mobile Device Center**.
- 3 Select **Connect without setting up your device**.
- 4 Select **Pictures, Music and Video**.
- 5 Select **X new pictures/video clips are available for import**.

All new or changed pictures and videos on your smartphone are synchronized to your computer.

Camera



Your smartphone comes with an easy-to-use, built-in, 1.3 megapixel camera with 2x digital zoom. You can use the camera to take and view pictures and videos and send them to your friends and family. To add a personal touch to your smartphone, use your pictures as your Today screen background and as caller ID images (see [Using a picture as the Today screen background](#) and [Adding a contact](#)). You can even use your videos to create video ringtones (see [Creating a video ringtone](#)).

You can receive and view pictures and videos, and send pictures and videos as attachments or multimedia messages (see [Pictures & Videos](#)). Or add a picture to a contact (see [Adding a contact](#)). You can also move pictures and videos to a computer by synchronizing your smartphone with your computer (see [Synchronizing your media files](#)).

Taking a picture

By default, pictures are stored in the My Pictures folder on your smartphone. If you want to store your pictures on an expansion card (sold separately), you can change where pictures are stored (see [Customizing your Camera settings](#)). For information on accessing your pictures on your Windows XP computer, see [Synchronizing media files: Windows XP](#).







DID YOU KNOW? Pictures are captured and stored in 16-bit color, JPG format. Resolution settings range from a low end of QQVGA (120 x 160 pixels) to a high end of 1.3 megapixels (1280 x 1024 pixels). You can change the default setting. See [Customizing your Camera settings](#) for details.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Camera** .



TIP If you see a camcorder icon below the preview image, video mode is on. To turn on the still camera, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Still**.





- 3 Adjust the position of your smartphone until you see the subject you want to photograph on the screen. Your smartphone has a self-portrait mirror next to the camera lens on the back of your smartphone. Use the mirror when you want to be in the picture you're taking.

- 4 (Optional) Adjust any of the following:
- Zoom:** Press **Up** ▲ to zoom in or **Down** ▼ to zoom out.
 - Resolution:** Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Resolution** to change the image quality.
- 5 (Optional) Set a five-second timer: Press **Menu**  (right softkey), select **Mode**, and then select **Timer**.
- 6 Press **Center**  to capture the picture or start the timer. Hold your smartphone still until the picture renders
- 7 Do one of the following:
- Press **Camera**  (left softkey) to take another picture.
 - Press **OK**  and then press **Thumbnails**  (left softkey) to return to Thumbnail View.

DID YOU KNOW? After three minutes of inactivity when previewing an image, the camera goes into standby mode. Press any key or tap the screen to return to the image preview.

Taking pictures in burst mode












Burst mode takes five pictures in quick succession, with one button press.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Camera** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Mode** > **Burst**.
- 4 Press **Center** .

Recording a video

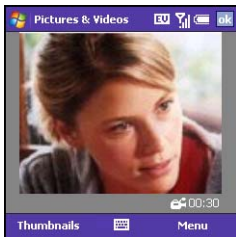
Videos can be any length, provided you have enough storage space available. By default, videos are stored in the My Pictures folder on your smartphone. If you want to store your videos on an expansion card (sold separately), see [Customizing your Camera settings](#) to change where videos are stored. For information on accessing your videos on your Windows XP computer, see [Synchronizing media files: Windows XP](#).

DID YOU KNOW? Videos are captured and stored in 3GP format. Video resolution ranges from 176 x 144 pixels to 352 x 288 pixels.



- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Camera** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Video**.
- 4 Adjust the position of your smartphone until you see the subject you want to record on the screen. Your smartphone has a self-portrait mirror next to the camera lens on the back of your smartphone. Use the mirror when you want to be in the video you're recording.
- 5 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Quality** to change the video resolution.
- 6 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Brightness** to change the brightness setting.
- 7 Press **Center**  to start recording.
- 8 When you have finished recording, press **Stop**  (left softkey) or **Center**  to stop recording.
- 9 (Optional) To review the video in Windows Media Player Mobile, press **Thumbnails**  (left softkey), highlight the video, and then press **Center** . Press **OK**  to return to Thumbnail View.

TIP If you don't like a video you recorded, delete it. See [Deleting a picture or video](#) for details.

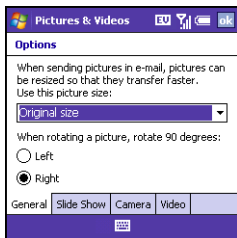
DID YOU KNOW? After three minutes of inactivity when previewing an image, the camera goes into standby mode. Press any key or tap the screen to return to the image preview. If the camera goes to standby while the recording is paused, the video recording is stopped and the video is saved.



Customizing your Camera settings

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.

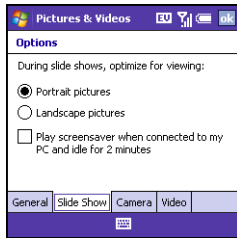
- 3 On the General tab, set any of the following options:



Use this picture size: Sets the size of pictures you send with the Messaging application.

When rotating a picture, rotate 90 degrees: Sets the direction in which pictures rotate.

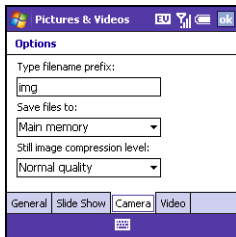
- 4 Select the **Slide Show** tab, and set any of the following options:



During slide shows, optimize for viewing: Sets whether pictures are optimized for portrait or landscape format during slide shows.

Play screensaver when connected to my PC and idle for 2 minutes: Sets whether the pictures in your My Pictures folder are used as a screensaver when your smartphone is connected to your computer and ActiveSync® desktop software is not running.

- 5 Select the **Camera** tab, and set any of the following options:

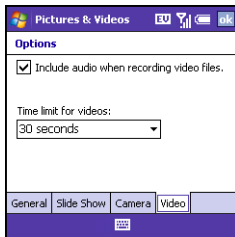


Type filename prefix: Assigns a name to a series of pictures to be captured, such as **Seattle001**, **Seattle002**, and so on.

Save files to: Specifies whether pictures and videos are stored on your smartphone or on an expansion card. The Storage card option appears only if you have an expansion card (sold separately) inserted into your smartphone.

Still image compression level: Sets the default quality and size for newly captured still pictures.

- 6 Select the **Video** tab, and set any of the following options:



Include audio when recording video files: Turns the microphone on and off so that you can record videos with or without sound.

Time limit for videos: Limits the length of videos you record. You can select the **No limit** option.



- 7 Press **OK**  to return to Thumbnail View.

Pictures & Videos

Viewing a picture

In addition to viewing the pictures you capture with the built-in camera, you can view pictures captured on many popular digital cameras or downloaded from the Internet. Your smartphone supports the following picture formats:



- JPG
- PNG
- BMP
- GIF

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Select the picture you want to view.
- 3 Press **OK**  to return to Thumbnail View.

Viewing a video










In addition to viewing the videos you capture with the built-in camera, you can view videos captured on many popular digital cameras or streamed from websites. Your smartphone supports and streams the following types of video files:

- MPEG-4
- 3GPP2
- 3GPP
- WMV, WMA, ASF
- RTSP Streaming

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Select the video you want to view. For more info on viewing videos, see [Playing media files on your smartphone](#).
- 3 Press **OK**  to return to Thumbnail View.

TIP To view pictures or videos in a different folder, tap the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select the album you want to view.

Viewing a slide show

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Play Slide Show**. The slide show plays automatically.
- 3 Press **Center**  to display the slide show toolbar, which you can use to **Rotate** , **Play** , **Pause** , **Reverse** , **Forward** , and **Stop**  the slide show.


NOTE You must tap the onscreen slide show icons. You cannot select them with the 5-way.

TIP You can manually go forward or backward through slides by pressing **Right** or **Left** on the 5-way.

Sending a picture or video


You can send a picture or video to other picture-enabled mobile devices or to an email address as an attachment.

You cannot send copyrighted pictures or videos that appear with a lock icon in Thumbnail View.

- 1 In Thumbnail View, highlight the picture or video you want to send.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Send**.
- 3 Select the option you want to use to send the picture or video: an email account or MMS (multimedia message).
- 4 When the Messaging application opens, address and send the message (see [Creating and sending an email message](#) or [Creating and sending a multimedia message](#)).




Creating a video ringtone

You can save a video that you record as a ringtone.

- 1 In Thumbnail View, highlight the video you want to use as a ringtone.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Save to Contact Ring Tone**.
- 3 Select the contact to whom you want to assign the ringtone.

Organizing pictures and videos



You can move or copy pictures and videos to other folders or between your smartphone and an expansion card (sold separately) inserted into your smartphone.

- 1 In Thumbnail View, highlight the picture or video you want to move or copy.
- 2 Do one of the following:
 - To move the picture or video to another location, press **Menu**  and select **Edit > Cut**.
 - To keep the picture or video in two locations, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Edit > Copy**.
- 3 Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left, and select the location where you want to place the picture or video.
- 4 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Edit > Paste**.

You can also view a specific folder or expansion card and arrange the pictures and videos by name, date, or size.







- 1 Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select the folder you want to view.
- 2 Tap the **Sort By** list in the upper-right, and then select the sort method: **Name**, **Date**, or **Size**.




Using a picture as the Today screen background

- 1 In Thumbnail View, highlight the picture you want to use.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Set as Today Background**.
- 3 Select the **Transparency level** list and select the appropriate level. Use a higher percentage for a more transparent picture and a lower percentage for a more opaque picture.
- 4 Press **OK**  to return to Thumbnail View.


Editing a picture

For more extensive edits, just download your picture or video to your computer and edit it in your favorite graphics program. Then sync the picture or video back to your smartphone.



- 1 In Thumbnail View, select the picture you want to edit.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Edit**.
- 3 Do any of the following:
 - To rotate the picture 90 degrees, press **Rotate**  (left softkey).
 - To crop the picture, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Crop**. Tap and drag the stylus to highlight the area to crop. Tap inside the box to crop the highlighted area. Tap outside the box to cancel cropping.
 - To adjust the brightness and contrast levels of the picture, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **AutoCorrect**.
 - To undo an edit, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Undo**.
 - To cancel all unsaved edits you made to the picture, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Revert to Saved**.

- To save the edited picture with the same file name, press **OK** .
- To save the edited picture with a different file name, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Save As**. Enter a new name for the file and press **OK** .

Deleting a picture or video

- 1 In Thumbnail View, highlight the picture or video you want to delete.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Delete**.
- 3 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Renaming a picture or video

- 1 In Thumbnail View, highlight the picture or video you want to delete.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Properties**.
- 3 Enter a new name for the picture or video.
- 4 Press **OK**  to return to Thumbnail View.

Windows Media Player Mobile

Windows Media Player Mobile can play music, audio, and video files that are stored on your smartphone or on an expansion card (sold separately) in any of the following file formats:

- WMA
- WMV
- MP3
- 3GP

DID YOU KNOW? You can also download animated GIF files and view them in Internet Explorer Mobile.

IMPORTANT You must have QuickTime Player version 6.5 or later installed on your computer to play videos recorded by your smartphone. You can download the videos from an expansion card or you can click the video thumbnail after synchronizing the files.

You can listen to these music, audio, and video files through the speaker on the back of your smartphone or through the stereo headset.

Transferring media files to your smartphone

Use the Sync feature in the desktop version of Windows Media Player to transfer digital music, audio, video, and playlist files from your computer to an expansion card or your smartphone. Using the Sync feature ensures that the files are transferred correctly.

TIP For tips on using the desktop version of Windows Media Player, go to the Help menu in Windows Media Player on your computer.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Do the following:

- Be sure you have Windows Media Player 10 or later installed on your computer.

Windows XP users: Windows Media Player 10 must be installed on your computer before you install ActiveSync desktop software. (If you are having

trouble, see [My video and music files won't sync.](#))

Windows Vista users: Version 11 of Windows Media Player is already installed and ready to use on your computer.




- To sync media files with your computer, set the Media sync option on your smartphone (see [Setting synchronization options](#)).
- 1 On your computer, open Windows Media Player.
- 2 (Optional) If you're transferring media files to an expansion card, insert a 32MB or larger expansion card into your smartphone.
- 3 Connect your smartphone to your computer with the USB sync cable.
- 4 Do one of the following:

Windows XP: When the Device Setup Wizard opens on your computer, click **Automatic**. Check the **Customize the playlists that will be synchronized** box.

Windows Vista: Select the **Sync** tab, and then select **Treo > Set Up Sync**. Check the **Sync this device automatically** box.

- 5 Select the playlists you want to sync. On a Windows Vista computer, select the **All Photos** and **All Videos** playlists to synchronize pictures and videos between your smartphone and your computer.
- 6 Click **Finish** to begin the transfer. If you are transferring files to an expansion card, be patient; transferring media files to an expansion card can take several minutes.

Playing media files on your smartphone



- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Windows Media** .
- 3 If the Library screen is not displayed, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Library**.
- 4 Tap the **Library** list in the upper-left, and then select the library you want to use.

TIP To play a file that is not in a library, go to the Library screen, press **Menu** (right softkey), and then select **Open File**.

TIP For more information on using libraries, see [\(Working with libraries\)](#).

- 5 Select the category containing the media file you want to play. Continue selecting categories until the list of individual items (videos, songs, albums, or artist names) appears.

TIP If you can't find the item you want, update the library (see [Working with libraries](#)).

- 6 Select the item you want to play (such as a song, album, or artist name).
- 7 Press **Play**  (left softkey). See the next section for playback controls.
- 8 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select any of the following during playback:

Library: Displays the Library screen so you can select a different media file to play.

Shuffle/Repeat > Shuffle: Plays the Now Playing playlist in random order. A

checkmark appears next to this command when it is on.

Shuffle/Repeat > Repeat: Plays the Now Playing playlist repeatedly. A checkmark appears next to this command when it is on.



Stop: Ends playback.

Playback controls


Use any of the following onscreen controls during playback:

 or **Center**  plays the current file.

 or **Center**  pauses the current file.

 or **Left**  skips to the beginning of the current file or to the previous file.




 or **Right**  skips to the next file.

 sets the point from which playback begins. Tap and drag the slider to change the current position.

 or **Volume button** increases the volume level.

 or **Volume button** decreases the volume level.

 turns the sound on or off.

-  displays a video using the full screen.
-  displays a website where you can find music and videos to play.
-  indicates the rating of the current file. Select the star to change the rating.

DID YOU KNOW? You can play streaming files from the web. To play a Microsoft Media Streaming (MMS) file, press **Menu** on the Library screen and select **Open URL**. Select **URL** and enter the website address, or select **History** and select a site you've visited before.






DID YOU KNOW? If you close the Windows Media Player Mobile window, your music continues to play in the background.

Working with libraries

A library represents each of the storage locations available to Windows Media Player Mobile. If you have an expansion card (sold separately) inserted into your smartphone, you should have two libraries: My Device and My Storage Card. Each library contains links to the media files in that location. Windows Media Player Mobile usually updates the My Device

library automatically, but you must manually update the My Storage Card library.

TIP If you don't see a media file that you added, manually update the library.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Windows Media** .
- 3 If the Library screen is not displayed, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Library**.
- 4 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Update Library**.
- 5 Wait for the files to be added, and then press **Done**  (right softkey).

TIP To delete an item from a library, highlight the item and then press and hold **Center** on the 5-way to open the shortcut menu. Select **Delete from Library**, and then select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

DID YOU KNOW? If you move files between your smartphone and an expansion card, be sure to update your libraries, or you won't be able to see the files in their new location.

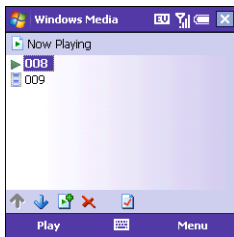
Working with playlists

A playlist is a list of media files that play in a specific order. You can use playlists to group audio files or video files together for convenient playback. For example, in the desktop Windows Media Player, you can create a playlist of upbeat songs for when you exercise and a playlist of soothing songs for a long flight. When you synchronize, your favorite playlists are automatically copied to your smartphone. Your playlists appear in your libraries (in the My Playlists category).



A temporary playlist, called Now Playing, appears on the Now Playing menu. It lists the currently playing file, as well as any files that are queued up to play next. You can add to, modify, or clear the files on the Now Playing playlist.

1 Go to the Now Playing screen:




- If you are on the Library screen, select the **Now Playing** category.
- If you are on the Playback screen, select **Now Playing**.





2 Do any of the following:



- To move a file up or down one slot, highlight the file and select **Move Up**  or **Move Down** .

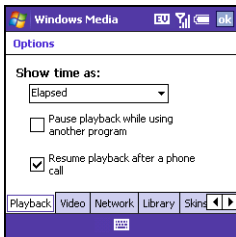
TIP You can also move a file in the Now Playing playlist by tapping and dragging it to a new position.

- To add a file, highlight the file, select **Add** , press **Menu**  (right softkey), and then select **Queue Up**.
- To delete a file from the playlist, highlight the file and select **Remove** .

- To view more info about a file, highlight the file and select **Properties** .
- To remove all items from the Now Playing playlist, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Clear Now Playing**.

Customizing Windows Media Player Mobile

- 1 If you are on any screen other than the Playback screen, press **OK**  to go to the Playback screen.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.
- 3 On the Playback tab, set any of the following options:



Show time as: Sets whether the time remaining or time elapsed appears in the Playback screen.

Pause playback while using another program: Sets whether playback continues if you switch to another application.

Resume playback after a phone call: Sets whether playback continues after you finish a phone call.


- 4 Select the **Video** tab and set any of the following options:

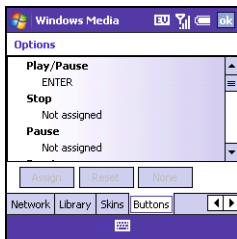
Play video in full screen: Sets whether videos automatically play in full screen format.

Scale to fit window: Sets whether videos are automatically scaled to fit the Playback screen.

- 5 Select the **Network** tab and set the following options:

Protocol: Enables and disables the available protocols. You must select at least one protocol. You can also set a UDP port.

- Internet connection speed:** Specifies the speed of your network connection, and specifies whether you want the device to detect connection speed.
- 6 Select the **Library** tab and set whether you want to see the Library or the Playback screen when you open Windows Media Player Mobile.
 - 7 Select the **Skins** tab and select **Previous** or **Next** to set the player's background.
 - 8 Select the **Buttons** tab to change any of the available button settings:
 - To assign a button, highlight the item you want to set, select **Assign**, and then press the button you want to use for that item.
 - To restore an item's factory setting, highlight the item and select **Reset**.
 - To unassign an item, highlight the item and select **None**.
 - 9 Press **OK** .





Your personal information organizer

Say good-bye to paper calendars and throw away those scribbled to-do lists. Your Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone is all you need to organize your personal information and keep it with you wherever you go.

You never lose your information, even if your battery is completely drained. All your personal information is backed up each time you synchronize, and your information is kept private when you use the security features available on your smartphone. Also, you can easily share info with others electronically.

Benefits




- Track current, future, and past appointments
- Make to-do lists that get done
- Set reminders for appointments, birthdays, important tasks, and more

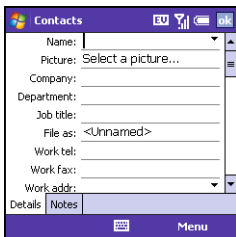
In this chapter

Contacts	183
Calendar	186
Tasks	192
Notes	195

Contacts

Adding a contact

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Contacts**.
- 2 Press **New**  (left softkey).
- 3 Use the **5-way**  to move between fields as you enter information.






TIP Take some time to scroll down through all the fields in a new contact. There are fields for multiple addresses, phone numbers, email addresses, and much more.

TIP Be sure to enter mobile numbers and email addresses in the correct fields so that Messaging can find this info when you address a message and Calendar can find your contacts when you want to invite them to meetings.

Here are some helpful tips for entering info:

- To enter complete name or address (work, home, or other) information, tap the arrow on the right side of the line and enter the information in the box that appears. When finished, tap outside the box to accept the information and close the box.
- To add a caller ID picture that displays when that person calls, select **Picture**, and then select **Camera** and take a picture, or select an existing picture from Thumbnail View.



- To assign a ringtone to the entry, select **Ring tone** and select a tone.
 - To assign the entry to one or more categories, select **Categories** and then check the categories under which you want this entry to appear. To add a new category, press **New**  (left softkey), enter the category name, and then press **OK** .
- 4 To add a note to an entry, select the **Notes** tab.
 - 5 After you enter all the information, press **OK** .

Viewing or changing contact information

- 1 In the Contacts list, begin entering any combination of letters from the contact's first and/or last name. If you use both first- and last-name letters, separate them by a space. You can type letters from the last name first. For example, entering **SM** finds both Smilla Anderson and John Smith. Entering **SM AN** finds both Smilla Anderson and Ann Smith.

- 2 To view a contact entry, select it. To edit a contact entry, highlight the contact name and continue with step 3.


DID YOU KNOW? When you select a contact entry, you are presented with several options for contacting the person, depending on what information you have entered for the contact. For example, you may see options for calling a number associated with the contact, sending an email to the contact's email address, or calling the last number you dialed to call the contact.

- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Edit**.
- 4 Make changes to the entry as necessary.
- 5 Press **OK** .


DID YOU KNOW? You can find a contact by company name. On the Contacts list screen, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **View By > Company**. Select a company name to see the contacts who work there.

TIP To view a particular group of contacts, press **Menu** (right softkey), select **Filter**, and then select the category you want to view.

Deleting a contact

- 1 In the Contacts list, highlight the contact you want to delete.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Delete Contact**.
- 3 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Customizing Contacts

- 1 Go to the Contacts list.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.
- 3 Set any of the following options:
Show alphabetical index: Displays the alphabet at the top of the Contacts list. You can use this index to find a contact.

Show contact names only: Enables you to display more names on the Contacts list by hiding everything but the contact's name.

Area code: Specifies the default area code for new contact entries.



- 4 Press **OK** .

Finding a contact in an online address book

In addition to having contacts on your device, you can also access contact information from your organization's online address book or Global Address List (GAL).



BEFORE YOU BEGIN Do the following:

- Make sure you are accessing Exchange Server 2007, or Exchange Server 2003 upgraded to Service Pack 2.
- Add access to the online address book to your smartphone. See [Adding an online address book](#).
- After adding the online address book, synchronize with the Exchange server so that the Company Directory option appears.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Contacts**.
- 2 Press **Menu** , select **Company Directory**, enter the name of the contact, and then select **Search**.

Calendar

Displaying your calendar

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Calendar**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **View**.
- 3 Select one of the following views:
Agenda: Shows your daily schedule in list format. Upcoming appointments are bold; past appointments are dimmed. Agenda View displays a horizontal time strip at the top to show at a glance when you have appointments.

Day: Shows your daily schedule in day-planner format.

Week: Shows your schedule for an entire week.


DID YOU KNOW? If your schedule contains a conflict—two appointments that overlap—you can see the conflict in both Day View and Week View.

Month: Shows your schedule for a whole month.



- ▶ A morning appointment
- ▶ An afternoon appointment
- Both morning and afternoon appointments
- An all-day event

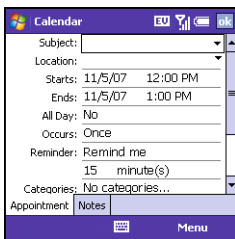
Year: Shows a calendar for a six-month period.


TIP To switch views, press the **left softkey**. Don't confuse the view name displayed above the left softkey with the current view. The left softkey displays the name of the next view you see when you press the key.

- 4 Use the **5-way**  to move to another day, week, month, or year (depending on the current view).

Creating an appointment

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Calendar**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **New Appointment**.




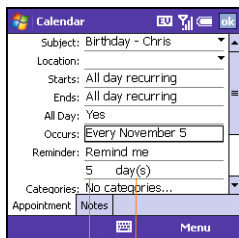
- 3 Enter a subject (description) and a location.
- 4 Select **Starts** and select the starting date and time.
- 5 Select **Ends** and select the ending date and time.
- 6 Press **OK** .

TIP To “pencil in” an appointment, select **Status**, and then select **Tentative**.

TIP You can display your appointments on your Today screen (see [Selecting which items appear on your Today screen](#)).

Adding an alarm reminder to an event

- 1 Create an event and then select it.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Edit**.
- 3 Select **Reminder** and then select **Remind Me**.
- 4 Enter the number of minutes, hours, days, or weeks before the event you would like to receive the alarm.



Type of time units

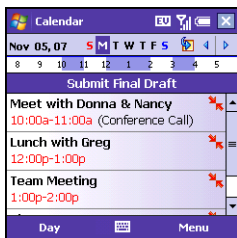
Number of time units

- 5 Press **OK** .




Creating an untimed event

An untimed event, such as a birthday, anniversary, or vacation, does not occur at


a particular time of day. These events appear as banners at the top of your calendar; they don't occupy blocks of time. For example, "Submit Final Draft" in the following screenshot is an untimed event.



DID YOU KNOW? An untimed event can last longer than a day.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Calendar**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **New Appointment**.
- 3 Enter a subject (description).
- 4 Select the starting and ending dates.
- 5 Select **All Day**, and then select **Yes**.
- 6 Press **OK** .

Scheduling a repeating appointment

- 1 Create an appointment or untimed event, and then select it.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Edit**.
- 3 Select **Occurs**, and then select a repeat pattern. To create a repeat pattern, select **Edit pattern** and follow the onscreen instructions.


TIP To enter a birthday or an anniversary, create an untimed event that repeats every year.

- 4 Press **OK** .


Sending a meeting request

You can email meeting invitations to contacts who use Microsoft Office Outlook® or Outlook Mobile.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Create contact entries with email addresses for the people you want to invite to a meeting. You can't access contact entries without email addresses from your calendar.

- 1 Create an event, and then select it.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Edit**.
- 3 Select **Attendees**. Select **Add Required Attendee**, and then select the name of the contact you want to invite. To invite other attendees, select **Add Required Attendee**, and then select the names.
- 4 (Optional) To invite optional attendees, select **Add Optional Attendee**, and then select the names.

DID YOU KNOW? If you are using Exchange Server 2007, or Exchange Server 2003 with Service Pack 2, you can use your corporate Global Address List to find contact information for an attendee. Select **Attendees**, press **Menu** (right softkey), and then select **Company Directory**. Enter the name of the attendee and select **Find**.

- 5 Press **OK** .

The next time you synchronize, the meeting request is sent to the attendees. When attendees accept your meeting request, the meeting is automatically


added to their schedules. When you receive their response, your calendar is updated as well.

Replying to a meeting request

You receive and reply to meeting requests in the Messaging application (see [Working with meeting invitations](#)). If you accept or tentatively accept an invitation, it shows up as an appointment in your Calendar.

Marking an event as sensitive

If other people have access to your Microsoft Office Outlook calendar on your computer and you don't want them to see an appointment, you can mark that appointment as private to hide it from other Microsoft Office Outlook users.

- 1 Create an event, and then select it.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Edit**.
- 3 Select **Sensitivity**, and then select one of the following:

Personal: Displays the event on your smartphone and on your computer. Meeting attendees or recipients see

“Please treat this as Personal” near the top of an open appointment.

Private: Displays the event on your smartphone and on your computer. Meeting attendees or recipients see “Please treat this as Private” near the top of an open appointment. If you sync with an Exchange server, other users who can access your folders can’t see your private events; they see private events as unavailable time slots.




Confidential: Displays the event on your smartphone and on your computer. Meeting attendees or recipients see “Please treat this as Confidential” near the top of an open appointment.

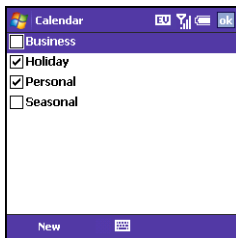
TIP If you don’t see an option on the screen, press **Down** on the 5-way to scroll to other options. For example, when editing an event, you don’t see the Sensitivity option until you scroll toward the bottom of the entry.



- 4 Press **OK** .

Organizing your schedule

Use categories to view various types of events.


- 1 Create an event, and then select it.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Edit**.
- 3 Select **Categories**, and then check the categories that apply to this event. To add a new category, press **New** , enter the category name, and then press **OK** .




- 4 Press **OK**  two more times.
- 5 After you assign events to categories, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Filter**.
- 6 Select the type of events you want to view.

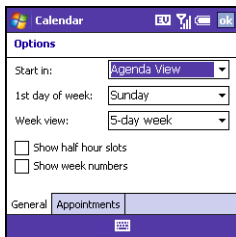
TIP Wonder why you're not seeing all the events in your day? Check to make sure that the filter is set to All Appointments.

Deleting an event

- 1 Highlight the event you want to delete.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Delete Appointment**.
- 3 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Customizing Calendar

- 1 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Tools > Options**.
- 2 On the General tab, set any of the following options:



Start in: Specifies which view is displayed when you open Calendar.

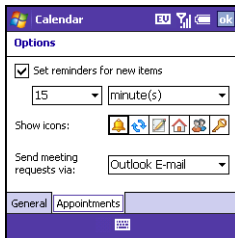
1st day of week: Specifies Sunday or Monday as the first day of the week for all Calendar views.

Week view: Specifies whether five, six, or seven days appear in Week View.

Show half hour slots: Specifies whether time slots appear in hour or half-hour increments in Day View and Week View.

Show week numbers: Specifies whether week numbers (1–52) appear in Week View.

- 3 Select the **Appointments** tab and set any of the following options:





Set reminders for new items:


Specifies whether a reminder is automatically added to new events and how long before the event the reminder appears. You can override this setting for individual events.

Show icons: Specifies which icons appear next to events.


 The event has a reminder.

 The event repeats in a specified pattern.

 The event has a note attached.

 A location has been assigned to the event.

 The event is a meeting.

 The event is marked private.

TIP Not all icons appear in all Calendar views.




Send meeting requests via: Specifies the email account used to send meeting requests.

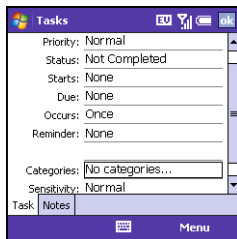
- 4 Press **OK** .

Tasks

You can use Tasks to remind you of tasks you need to complete and to keep a record of completed tasks.

Adding a task

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Tasks** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **New Task**.
- 4 Enter a description of the task in the Subject field.
- 5 Set any of the following:



The screenshot shows a 'Tasks' dialog box with the following fields and values:

- Priority: Normal
- Status: Not Completed
- Starts: None
- Due: None
- Occurs: Once
- Reminder: None
- Categories: No categories...
- Sensitivity: Normal

At the bottom, there are 'Task' and 'Notes' tabs, and a 'Menu' button.

Priority: Specifies the priority level for this task. Later you can arrange your tasks based on the importance of each task.

Status: Indicates whether the task is now completed.

Starts: Specifies when the task begins.

Due: Specifies the due date for the task.

Occurs: Indicates if the task repeats at regular intervals and how often it repeats.

Reminder: Sets an alarm for this task and indicates when you want to be reminded.

Categories: Assigns the task to one or more categories. To add a new category, press **New** (left softkey), enter the category name, and then press **OK**.

Sensitivity: Marks this task as Normal, Personal, Private, or Confidential (see [Marking an event as sensitive](#) for descriptions of these three terms).

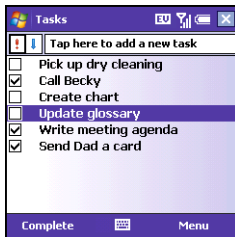
- (Optional) Select the **Notes** tab and enter additional text for the task.
- Press **OK**.

TIP You can also add a task by selecting the Tasks entry bar at the top of the task list screen, entering the task description, and then tapping anywhere outside of the entry bar. Select the icons to the left of the bar to set the task as high or low priority.

TIP You can display your tasks on your Today screen (see [Selecting which items appear on your Today screen](#)).

Checking off a task

- Highlight the task you want to check off.





- Press **Complete** (left softkey).


TIP You can also mark a task complete by tapping the check box next to the task on the Tasks list.

DID YOU KNOW? Overdue tasks appear in red.



Organizing your tasks

- 1 In the Tasks list, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Filter**.
- 2 Select which tasks you want to view: **All Tasks, Recently Viewed, No Categories, Active Tasks, Completed Tasks**, or a specific category, such as Business or Personal.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Sort By**.
- 4 Select the sort method: **Status, Priority, Subject, Start Date**, or **Due Date**.

Deleting a task

- 1 Highlight the task you want to delete.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Delete Task**.
- 3 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Customizing Tasks




- 1 Go to the Tasks list.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.
- 3 Set any of the following options:
 - Set reminders for new items:** Automatically adds a reminder to new tasks. The default reminder is set to 8:00 on the morning the task is due. You can override this setting for individual tasks.
 - Show start and due dates:** Displays task start and due dates in the Tasks list.
 - Show Tasks entry bar:** Displays the Tasks entry bar at the top of the Tasks list.
- 4 Press **OK** .

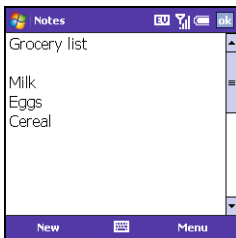
Notes



Notes are a great way to capture thoughts, questions, and meeting notes on your smartphone. You can also create a voice note or add a recording to an existing note.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN To take advantage of all the sync features available in the Notes application, install the desktop synchronization software (see [Setting up your computer for synchronization](#)).



Creating a note


- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Notes** .
- 3 Press **New**  (left softkey).
- 4 Do one of the following:




- Type the text with the keyboard.
 - If you turned on writing mode (see [Customizing Notes](#)), write the text with the stylus.
 - Press **Menu** , select **Draw**, and then draw a sketch with the stylus, crossing at least three ruled lines.
- 5 Press **OK** .

Creating a voice note

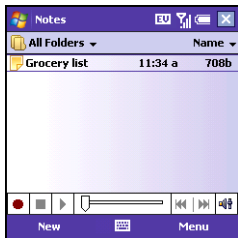
- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Notes** .
- 3 Do one of the following:

To create a new voice note: Press **New**  (left softkey)




To add a voice recording to an existing note: Open the note to which you want to add the recording.

- 4 If the voice note controls are not visible at the bottom of the screen, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **View Recording Toolbar**.

- 5 Tap the **Record**  icon.




Voice
note
controls

- 6 Speak into the microphone on your smartphone, or hold it close to another sound source.
- 7 When you finish recording, tap the **Stop**  icon. A **Recording**  icon appears in the note or note list, depending on where you recorded the note.
- 8 Press **OK** .

DID YOU KNOW? You can add several voice notes within a single note.

TIP To play a recording, select the voice note in the Notes list or open the note containing the recording and tap the **Recording** icon. Tap the controls at the bottom of the screen to control playback and volume.

Creating a note from a template



- 1 Go to the **Notes** list.
- 2 Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select **Templates**. If you don't see **Templates** in the **Show** list, select **More Folders** to access this folder.
- 3 Open the template you want to use.
- 4 Enter the information.
- 5 Press **OK** .
- 6 Rename the note and move it to the appropriate folder. See [Organizing your notes](#) for details.

TIP To create a new template, highlight the note you want to save as a template. Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Rename/Move**. Select **Name**, and then enter a name for the template. Select the **Folder** list, select **Templates**, and then press **OK**.

Organizing your notes


You can rename your notes, move notes to another folder, and move notes between your smartphone and an expansion card (sold separately).

- 1 Go to the Notes list and highlight a note you want to move.

- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Rename/Move**.
- 3 Select **Name** and enter a new name for the note.
- 4 Select **Folder**, and then select the folder in which you want to store the note.
- 5 Select **Location**, and then select **Main memory** or **Storage Card**. The Storage Card option appears only if you have an expansion card (sold separately) inserted into your smartphone.
- 6 Press **OK** .

TIP To create a new folder, go to the Notes list, tap the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select **Add/Delete**. Select **New**, enter a name for the folder, and then press **OK**.

Deleting a note

- 1 Go to the Notes list and highlight the note you want to delete.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Delete**.
- 3 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Customizing Notes

- 1 Go to the Notes list.

- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.
- 3 Set any of the following options:

Default mode: Makes the default entry mode either Writing or Typing. The default is Typing; if you change it to Writing, you can write notes directly on the screen using the stylus.

Default template: Specifies the default template for new notes.

Save to: Indicates the default location where new notes are stored.

Record button action: Specifies what happens when you press the Side button to record a voice note while in another application: whether the Notes application opens or whether you stay in the current application.

TIP To use the Record button action feature, you need to assign the Side button to open Notes. See [Reassigning buttons](#).

TIP Tap **Global Input Options** to set options for entering text in any application (see [Setting input options](#)).

- 4 Press **OK** .



Your Microsoft Office and other document tools

Your Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone enables you to take your office with you—including your Microsoft Office files. With Microsoft Office, you can carry, create, view, and edit Microsoft Word and Excel files directly on your smartphone. You can also view, carry, and manage PowerPoint files on your smartphone. You can keep updated copies of the files on both your smartphone and your computer so that you can work on them in the most convenient location at any time.

You can also use PDF Viewer to view PDF files on your smartphone.

Benefits

- Manage Word, Excel, and PowerPoint files on your smartphone
- Improve productivity by taking important docs, spreadsheets, and presentations with you
- Work with PDF files

In this chapter

Synchronizing your Microsoft Office files	201
Word Mobile	203
PowerPoint Mobile	209
Excel Mobile	210
PDF Viewer	222

Synchronizing your Microsoft Office files


You can create and edit Microsoft Office files on your computer or on your smartphone and then synchronize the files so that changes you make show up on both your computer and your smartphone. To synchronize Microsoft Office files, you must first choose Files as one of your synchronization options on your smartphone if you did not do so during desktop software installation; see [Setting up your computer for synchronization](#) and [Changing which applications sync](#).

The procedure for synchronizing files is different for computers running Windows XP and computers running Windows Vista.

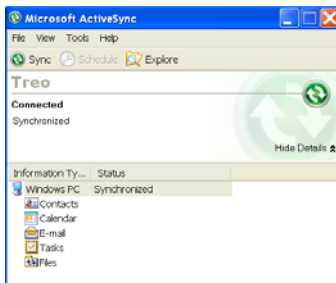
Synchronizing files: Windows XP

- 1 Connect your smartphone to your computer with the **USB sync cable**.

NOTE Most ActiveSync desktop software options are available only when your smartphone is connected to your computer.

- 2 On your computer, double-click the **ActiveSync®**  icon in the taskbar in the lower-right corner of your computer screen to open the ActiveSync desktop software window.

TIP If the ActiveSync icon does not appear in the taskbar, go to **Start**, navigate to **Programs**, and then select **Microsoft ActiveSync** to open the ActiveSync window.



- 3 Under Information Type, double-click **Files** to view a list of all synchronized files.

TIP If Files doesn't appear under Information Type, open the **Tools** menu and select **Options**. Make sure the **Files** box is checked.

- 4 Do any of the following:
 - To delete a file from the file sync folder on your computer and from your smartphone, highlight the file name and click **Remove**.
 - To copy a file from your computer to your smartphone, click **Add**, browse to and highlight the file, and then click **Open**.

NOTE If you receive an error while synchronizing files, make sure that all of the files you're trying to sync are closed on both your computer and on your smartphone.

Synchronizing files: Windows Vista

- 1 On your computer, copy or save the file to the Documents\Documents on *username's* Smartphone folder.

DID YOU KNOW? The Documents on *username's* Smartphone folder is created when you select the option to sync Files.

- 2 Connect your smartphone to your computer with the USB sync cable. Synchronization takes place automatically.

Where are the changes I made to my file?







Don't look for the changed file in its original location on your computer. Only the synchronized version contains the changes, and that version is in the ActiveSync file sync folder. To find this folder, do one of the following:

Windows XP: On your computer desktop, double-click the file sync folder icon. This is a shortcut to the file sync folder.

Windows XP: In ActiveSync desktop software, double-click **Files**. The location of the file sync folder appears in the File Synchronization Settings dialog box (under On this computer, synchronize the files in this folder).

Windows Vista: Open the Documents\Documents on *username's* Smartphone folder.

On your smartphone, you can find the synchronized file by doing either of the following:

- Press **Start**  and select **Office Mobile**. Select the application that opens the file: Word Mobile , Excel Mobile , or PowerPoint Mobile .
- Press **Start** , select **Programs**, and then select **File Explorer** . Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left and select **My Device > My Documents**.

Word Mobile

You can create and edit documents and templates and save them as DOC, RTF, TXT, and DOT files. You can also edit Microsoft Office Word documents and templates that you create on your computer. However, keep in mind that some of the information and formatting may be lost when you save the document on your smartphone.

DID YOU KNOW? If you have a PDF file (.pdf), you can view the file using PDF Viewer. Press **Start**, select **Programs**, and then select **PDF Viewer** (see [PDF Viewer](#)).

The following features are not supported in Word Mobile:

- Backgrounds.
- Bidirectional text.
- Document protection.
- Metafiles.
- Artistic page borders. Lined page borders are supported.
- Password-protected files. Remove password protection on your computer before opening the file on your smartphone.
- Shapes and text boxes.
- Smart tags.

The following features are partially supported in Word Mobile:

Picture bullets: Regular bullets are supported.

Revision marks: Documents appear as though all revisions were accepted; if the document is saved, revision marks are lost.

Table styles: Some or all of the formatting is lost if the document is saved.

Underline styles: Unsupported styles are mapped to one of the four supported styles: regular, dotted, wavy, or thick/bold/wide.

Legacy Pocket Word files: You can open PSW files, but if you edit a file, you need to save it in DOC, RTF, TXT, or DOT format.

The following features are not supported on your smartphone, but they remain in the file so that when you open the file on your computer, they appear as expected:

Fonts and font sizes: Original fonts are listed on your smartphone and are mapped to the closest font available.





Footnotes, endnotes, headers, and footers.

Lists: Indented lists are mapped to the closest indentation level supported by Word Mobile.



Page breaks: Although not displayed, all page breaks, except a break placed at the

end of a document, are retained in the document.

Creating a document


- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Office Mobile**.
- 2 Select **Word Mobile** .
- 3 The first time you open Word Mobile, a new document opens. Otherwise, press **New**  (left softkey).
- 4 Enter the text of the document.
- 5 Press **OK**  to save the file. When you save a new document, it is automatically named after the first several words in the file.

Opening an existing document

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Office Mobile**.
- 2 Select **Word Mobile** .
- 3 In the document list, select the document you want to open.


TIP To zoom in or out, press **View** (left softkey), select **Zoom**, and then select the zoom level.


Creating a document from a template

- 1 Go to the documents list.
- 2 Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left and select **Templates**. If you don't see Templates in the Show list, select **More Folders** to access this folder.
- 3 Open the template you want to use.
- 4 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **File > Save As**.
- 5 Select **Name** and enter a new name for the file.
- 6 Select the **Folder** list, and then select the folder where you want to save the file.
- 7 Select the **Type** list, and then select the format in which you want to save the file.
- 8 Select the **Location** list, and then select **Main memory** or **Storage Card**. The Storage Card option appears only if you have an expansion card (sold separately) inserted into your smartphone.
- 9 Select **Save**.



TIP To create a new template, highlight the document you want to save as a template. Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Rename/Move**. Select **Name** and enter a name for the template. Select the **Folder** list, and then select **Templates**. Press **OK**.

Finding or replacing text in a document

- 1 Open the document containing the text you want to find.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Edit > Find/Replace**.
- 3 Select **Find what** and enter the text you want to find.
- 4 (Optional) Check the **Match case** box to find text that matches the capitalization in the text you entered step 3.
- 5 (Optional) Check the **Match whole words only** box to find only full words that match the text you entered in step 3.
- 6 Select **Find** to locate the first instance of the text you entered in step 3, or select **Replace**, enter the replacement text, and then select **Find**.


- 7 Select **Next** to find the next instance of the text, or select **Replace** to replace it. To replace all instances of the text, select **Replace All**.
- 8 When you see a message that the search is done, press **OK** .

Moving or copying text


- 1 Open the document containing the text you want to move or copy.
- 2 Highlight the text you want to move or copy.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Copy** to copy the text, or select **Cut** to move the text.
- 4 Open the document where you want to insert the text and position the cursor where you want the text to appear.
- 5 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Paste**.



Saving a copy of a document

NOTE If a document was previously saved on a computer, any unsupported formatting may be lost when you save the file.


- 1 Open the document you want to copy.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **File > Save As**.
- 3 Select **Name** and enter a new name for the file.
- 4 Select the **Folder** list, and then select the folder where you want to save the file.
- 5 Select the **Type** list, and then select the format in which you want to save the file.
- 6 Select the **Location** list, and then select whether you want to store the file on your smartphone (**Main memory**) or on an expansion card (**Storage Card**). The Storage Card option appears only if you have an expansion card (sold separately) inserted into your smartphone.
- 7 Select **Save**.

Formatting text

- 1 Open the document you want to format.
- 2 Highlight the text you want to format.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Format > Font**.

- 4 Set any of the following options for the highlighted text:
- Font:** Specifies the typeface.
 - Font color:** Specifies the color.
 - Size:** Specifies the point size.
 - Bold:** Indicates whether the text appears normal or thick.
 - Italic:** Indicates whether the text appears upright or slanted.
 - Underline:** Indicates whether the text appears with an underscore.
 - Highlight:** Indicates whether the text appears with a yellow highlight.
 - Strikethrough:** Indicates whether the text appears with a line through it.
- 5 Press **OK**  to return to the document.
- 4 Set any of the following options:
- Alignment:** Aligns the text paragraph with the left, right, or center of the page.
 - List:** Creates a bulleted or numbered list.
 - Indentation:** Changes the paragraph margins.
 - **Left:** Sets the left margin for the entire paragraph.
 - **Right:** Sets the right margin for the entire paragraph.
 - **Special:** Lets you indent the first line or set a hanging indent.
 - **By:** Sets the size of the special indentation.
- 5 Press **OK**  to return to the document.



Formatting paragraphs and lists

- 1 Open the document you want to format.
- 2 Position the cursor in the paragraph you want to format.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Format > Paragraph**.

TIP You can also use the Formatting toolbar at the bottom of the document screen to create a list and to align text. To indent text in lists, you must use the Formatting toolbar.


Checking spelling in a document

- 1 Open the document you want to check.

- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Tools > Spelling**. To check the spelling of specific text, highlight it before you select the Spelling command.
- 3 If an unknown or misspelled word is encountered, do one of the following:
 - Select the correct word in the list if the word is spelled incorrectly.
 - Select **Ignore** if the word is spelled correctly. To ignore all instances of the word, select **Ignore All**.
 - Select **Add** to add a new word to the spelling dictionary.
- 5 Select the **Folder** list, and then select the folder to which you want to move the document.
- 6 Select the **Location** list, and then select **Main memory** or **Storage Card**. The Storage Card option appears only if you have an expansion card (sold separately) inserted into your smartphone.
- 7 Press **OK** .

Organizing your documents


You can rename your documents, move your documents to another folder, and move your documents between your smartphone and an expansion card (sold separately) inserted into your smartphone.

- 1 Go to the documents list.
- 2 Highlight a file.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Rename/Move**.
- 4 Select **Name** and enter a new name for the document.



TIP To create a new folder, go to the documents list, tap the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select **Add/Delete**. Select **New**, enter a name for the folder, and then press **OK**.

TIP When you go to a folder, you can easily search your documents by sorting by type.

Deleting a document

- 1 Go to the documents list.
- 2 Highlight the document you want to delete.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Delete**.
- 4 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Customizing Word Mobile

- 1 Go to the document list.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.
- 3 Set any of the following options:
 - Default template:** Sets the default template for new documents.
 - Save to:** Sets the default location where new documents are stored.
 - Display in list view:** Sets the types of files that appear in the documents list.
- 4 Press **OK** .





PowerPoint Mobile

With PowerPoint Mobile, you can open and view slide show presentations created on your computer. Many presentation elements such as slide transitions, animations, and URL links are also supported. Microsoft Office PowerPoint® features not supported on your smartphone include the following:




- Notes written for slides
- Rearrangement or editing of slides

- Files created in PPT format earlier than Microsoft PowerPoint 97
- HTML files in HTM and MHT formats


Playing a presentation

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Office Mobile**.
- 2 Select **PowerPoint Mobile** .
- 3 In the presentations list, select the presentation you want to play.
- 4 Do any of the following:
 - Press **Right**  to advance to the next slide or **Left**  to view the previous slide.


NOTE If a presentation is set up as a timed slide show, the slides advance automatically. Presentations pause during zooming.

- Press **Center** , select **Go to Slide**, and then select the slide you want to view.
- Press **Center**  and select **Next** or **Previous** to play animations.
- To zoom in, Press **Center**  and select **Zoom In**. Tap and drag the

slide to scroll the slide. To return to normal view, press **Center**  and select **Zoom Out**.

- 5 To end the slide show, press **Center**  (right softkey) and select **End Show**.

Setting presentation playback options

- 1 In the presentations list, highlight the presentation for which you want to change the settings.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Set up show**.
- 3 On the Orientation tab, select the orientation you want. To select the orientation that best fits your smartphone screen, select **Default**.
- 4 Select the **Playback** tab, and check the **Override playback options for all files** box.
- 5 Set any of the following options:
 - Show without animation:** Turns off builds and other animations.
 - Show without slide transition:** Turns off transition effects between slides.

Use timings, if present: Enables the timings recorded with each slide in a presentation. If a presentation is set up as a timed slide show, the slides advance automatically. Presentations pause during zooming.

Loop continuously: Advances to the first slide after playing the last slide in a presentation.

- 6 Press **OK** .

TIP To turn the presentation into a continuously looping slide show, check both the **Use slide timings, if present**, and the **Loop continuously** boxes.

Excel Mobile

With Excel Mobile you can create and edit workbooks and templates on your smartphone. You can also edit workbooks and templates that you create on your computer. However, keep in mind that you may lose some of the information and formatting when you save the workbook on your smartphone.

Note the following formatting considerations:

Alignment: Vertical text appears horizontal.

Borders: Appear as a single line.

Cell patterns: Patterns applied to cells are removed.

Fonts and font sizes: The original font is listed on your smartphone and mapped to the closest font available. Original fonts reappear on your computer.

Number formats: Microsoft Office Excel® 97 conditional formatting is displayed in Number format.

Formulas and functions: Unsupported functions are removed, and only the returned value of the function appears. Formulas containing the following are also converted to values:

- An array or array argument, for example, =SUM({1;2;3;4})
- External link references or an intersection range reference
- References past row 16384 are replaced with #REF!

Protection settings: Most protection features are disabled but not removed. However, password protection is removed. You must remove the password protection in Microsoft Office Excel on your computer before opening the file on your smartphone.

Zoom settings: Worksheet-specific zoom settings are not retained. The zoom setting applies to the entire workbook.

Worksheet names: Names that refer to other workbooks, arrays, array formulas, or intersection ranges are removed from the name list, causing those formulas to be resolved as “#NAME?” All hidden names are not hidden.

AutoFilter settings: AutoFilters that cause rows to be hidden are supported. Use the Unhide command to display hidden rows. Other AutoFilters are removed, but you can use the AutoFilter command in Excel Mobile to perform similar functions.




Chart formatting: All charts are saved as they appear in Excel Mobile. Unsupported chart types are changed to one of these supported types: Column, Bar, Line, Pie, Scatter, and Area. Background colors,



gridlines, data labels, trend lines, shadows, 3D effects, secondary axes, and logarithmic scales are turned off.

The following features aren't supported in Excel Mobile and are removed or modified when you open a workbook on your smartphone:


- Hidden, dialog, and macro sheets
- VBA modules
- Text boxes
- Drawing objects and pictures
- Lists
- Conditional formats and controls
- Pivot table data (converted to values)

Creating a workbook

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Office Mobile**.
- 2 Select **Excel Mobile** .
- 3 The first time you open Excel Mobile, a new workbook appears. Otherwise, press **New**  (left softkey).
- 4 Highlight a cell where you want to enter text or other info.




- 5 Enter the info in the cell, and then press **Return** .
- 6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 to enter the remaining info.
- 7 Press **OK**  to save the file. When you save a new workbook, it is automatically named and placed in the workbook list.

Creating a workbook from a template


- 1 Go to the workbook list.
- 2 Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left and select **Templates**. If you don't see Templates in the Show list, select **More Folders** to access this folder.
- 3 Open the template you want to use.
- 4 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **File > Save As**.
- 5 Select **Name** and enter a new name for the workbook.
- 6 Select the **Folder** list, and then select the folder where you want to save the workbook.
- 7 Select the **Type** list, and then select the format in which you want to save the workbook.
- 8 Select **Save**.


TIP To create a new template, highlight the workbook you want to save as a template. Press **Menu** (right softkey), select **Rename/Move**, select **Name**, and then enter a name for the template. Select the **Folder** list and select **Templates**. Press **OK**.

Viewing a workbook

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Office Mobile**.
- 2 Select **Excel Mobile** .
- 3 In the workbook list, select the workbook you want to view.
- 4 Press **View**  (left softkey) and select any of the following:
 - Full Screen:** Shows as much data as possible on the screen. To return to the normal view, tap **Restore** in the upper-right.
 - Zoom:** Sets the magnification level so that you can easily read the worksheet.
 - Sheet:** Lets you switch to a different worksheet.

DID YOU KNOW? You can also switch worksheets by selecting the sheet list at the bottom of the screen.

Split: Divides the window into two scrollable areas. To move the split bar, tap and drag it. To remove the split bar, press **View**  (left softkey) and select **Remove Split**.

Freeze Panes: Locks rows and columns so they remain visible while you scroll. Highlight the cell at the point at which you want to lock before you select this command. To unlock the rows or columns, press **View**  (left softkey) and select **Unfreeze Panes**.




Toolbar: Indicates whether the toolbar appears onscreen.

Status Bar: Indicates whether the status bar appears onscreen.

Show: Indicates whether headings and scroll bars appear onscreen.

TIP To jump to a cell or region, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Edit > Go To**. Select **Cell reference or name** and enter the target cell info or select **Current region**. Select **OK**.

Calculating a sum

- 1 Press **View**  (left softkey) and select **Toolbar**.
- 2 Highlight the cell where you want to insert the sum.
- 3 Select .
- 4 Tap and drag the stylus across the cells you want to add.
- 5 Press **Return** .

TIP For simple calculations, use the Calculator (see [Calculator](#)).

Entering a formula


- 1 Highlight the cell where you want to enter the formula.
- 2 Enter equals sign (=) followed by any values, cell references, name references, operators, and functions.
Examples:
 - **=(B4/25)+100**

- **=Revenue-Expenses**

- 3 Press **Return** .

TIP To insert a symbol, place the cursor where you want the symbol. Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Insert > Symbol**. Highlight the symbol you want to insert, and select **Insert**.

Referring to a cell or range in a formula

- 1 Open the workbook where you want to refer to a cell or range in a formula.
- 2 Begin entering a formula in a cell.
- 3 Select the cell, or select an entire range to set the reference.
- 4 Finish entering the formula and press **OK** .

TIP To refer to a cell from another worksheet in your formula, enter the worksheet name followed by an exclamation point (!) and the cell, range, or name reference.

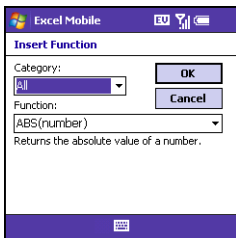
Example: **=Sheet1!Earnings**

TIP To create a 3-D reference in your formula, specify two or more sheets in a workbook; use a colon between the first and last worksheet names.

Example: **=SUM(Sheet2:Sheet6!\$A\$2:\$C\$5)**

Inserting a function

- 1 Open the workbook where you want to insert the function.
- 2 Highlight the cell where you want to enter a function.
- 3 Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Insert > Function**.



- 4 Select the **Category** list, and then select the type of function you want to insert.
- 5 Select the **Function** list, and then select the specific function you want to insert.
- 6 Select **OK**.

Entering a sequence automatically


- 1 Highlight both the cells containing the info you want to automate and the adjacent destination cells.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Edit > Fill**.
- 3 Select the **Direction** list, and then select the direction you want to populate.
- 4 Select the **Fill type** list, and then select **Series**.
- 5 Select the **Series type** list, and then select the type of series you want. If you select **Date** or **Number**, enter a **Step value** increment.

TIP Select **Autofill** as the series type to quickly fill cells with repetitive data such as numbers or repeated text. Autofill takes the content of the first cell in the highlighted row or column and copies it down or across the rest of the selection.

- 6 Select **OK**.

Adding cells, rows, and columns

- 1 Open the workbook you want.

- 2 Highlight the area where you want to insert elements.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Insert > Cells**.
- 4 Select how you want to insert the elements:

Shift cells right: Inserts the same number of new cells as the number of cells you highlighted horizontally in step 2. For example, if you selected an area containing two cells horizontally (say, A1 and B1), selecting Shift cells right inserts two horizontal cells; so the original A1 and B1 (and their contents) are now C1 and D1. The highlighted area and all cells on the right move the same number of columns—two in this example—to the right.

Shift cells down: Inserts the same number of new cells as the number of cells you highlighted vertically in step 2. For example, if you selected an area containing two cells vertically (say, A1 and A2), selecting Shift cells down inserts two vertical cells; so the original A1 and A2 (and their contents) are now A3 and A4. The highlighted area and all

cells below it move the same number of rows—two in this example—down.


Entire row: Inserts the same number of new rows as the number of cells you highlighted vertically in step 2. For example, if you selected an area containing two cells vertically (say A1 and A2), selecting Entire row inserts two rows; so the original rows 1 and 2 (and their contents) are now rows 3 and 4. The rows containing the highlighted area and all rows beneath it move the same number of rows—two in this example—down.

Entire column: Inserts the same number of new columns as the number of cells you highlighted horizontally in step 2. For example, if you selected an area containing two cells horizontally (say, A1 and B1), selecting Entire column inserts two columns; so the original columns A and B (and their contents) are now columns C and D. The columns containing the highlighted area and all columns on the right move the same number of columns—two in this example—to the right.

5 Select **OK**.

TIP To add a new worksheet, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Format > Modify Sheets**. Select **Insert**, enter a name for the worksheet, and then press **OK**. To change the order of the worksheets, highlight a worksheet you want to move, select **Move Up** or **Move Down**, and then press **OK**.

Formatting cells

- 1 Open the workbook you want to format.
- 2 Highlight the cells you want to format.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Format > Cells**.
- 4 Select any of the following tabs:

Size: Sets the row height and column width.

Number: Sets the type of information the cells contain.

Align: Sets whether text wraps within the highlighted cells, and sets horizontal and vertical alignment position.


Font: Sets the typeface, color, size, and style attributes.

Borders: Turns borders on and off for various cell edges, and sets the border and background colors.

5 Press **OK** .

TIP To name the highlighted cell or range of cells, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Insert > Define Name**. Enter the name and select **Add**. Press **OK**.

Formatting rows and columns

- 1 Open the workbook you want to format.
- 2 Highlight the rows or columns you want to format.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Format > Row** or **Format > Column**.
- 4 Select any of the following:



AutoFit: Adjusts the size of the highlighted rows or columns to their contents.

Hide: Hides the highlighted rows or columns.


Unhide: Displays hidden rows or columns in the highlighted area.

DID YOU KNOW? You can adjust the column and row size by tapping and dragging the right edge of the column or the bottom edge of the row. To automatically fit rows and columns to their contents, double-tap the lower edge of the row heading or the right edge of the column heading.

Renaming a worksheet


- 1 Open the workbook containing the worksheet you want to rename.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Format > Modify Sheets**.
- 3 In the Sheets list, highlight the worksheet you want to rename.
- 4 Select **Rename**, enter a new name for the worksheet, and then press **OK**  twice.


Sorting info in a worksheet

- 1 Highlight the cells you want to sort.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Tools > Sort**.
- 3 Select the **Sort by** list, and then select the primary sort column.

- 4 Check the **Ascending** box to sort in ascending (A-Z or 0-9) order. Leave the box unchecked to sort in descending (Z-A or 9-0) order.
- 5 (Optional) Select the **Then by** lists, and then select second- and third-level sorting options.
- 6 Check or uncheck the **Exclude header row from** sort box to indicate whether you want to sort the header row.
- 7 Select **OK**.





Filtering info in a worksheet


- 1 Highlight the cells that contain the info you want to filter.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Tools > AutoFilter**. In each column containing a highlighted cell, an arrow appears on the right side of the cell nearest the top of the column.
- 3 Tap the arrow to open a list, and then select a filter. This hides all rows that do not include the selected filter.
- 4 (Optional) Do any of the following:
 - Open the other lists, and select other filters.

- To display all rows again, open the filter lists, and then select **All**.
- To turn off filtering, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Tools > AutoFilter** again.



DID YOU KNOW? You can also create custom filters where you specify comparisons. Open the filter lists and select **Custom**.

Creating a chart



- 1 Open the workbook in which you want to create a chart.
- 2 Highlight the cells you want to include in the chart.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Insert > Chart**.
- 4 Select the type of chart, and then press **Next**  (right softkey).
- 5 Confirm the area you want the chart to include, and then press **Next**  (right softkey).
- 6 Select the data layout, and then press **Next**  (right softkey).
- 7 Check the boxes to indicate whether the first row and column represent labels.

- 8 Select whether you want the chart to appear as a separate worksheet within the current workbook, or as part of the current worksheet.
- 9 Press **Finish**  (right softkey).

Formatting or changing a chart



- 1 Open the workbook that contains the chart you want to format.
- 2 Open the chart.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Format > Chart**.
- 4 Select any of the following tabs:
 - Titles:** Specifies the title of the chart and headings, whether a legend appears, and the placement of the legend.
 - Scale:** Specifies the minimum and maximum scales for charts with x and y axes.
 - Type:** Specifies the chart style. You can use this setting to convert your chart to a different format.
 - Series:** Lets you add, modify, format, or delete related data points without affecting the info in your worksheet.
- 5 Press **OK** .

Finding or replacing info in a workbook

- 1 Open the workbook containing the info you want to find.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Edit > Find/Replace**.
- 3 Select **Find what** and enter the info you want to find.
- 4 (Optional) Check the **Match case** box to find text that matches the capitalization in any text you entered in step 3.
- 5 (Optional) Check the **Match entire cells** box to find only full cells whose contents match any text you entered in step 3.
- 6 Select the **Look in** field, and then select whether to search in formulas or values.
- 7 Select **Find** to locate the first instance of the info you entered in step 3, or select **Replace**, enter the replacement info, and then select **Find**.
- 8 Select **Next** to find the next instance of the info, or select **Replace** to replace it. To replace all instances of the info, select **Replace All**.
- 9 When you see a message that Excel Mobile is done searching, press **OK** .


Organizing your workbooks

You can rename your workbooks. You can also move them to another folder or move them between your smartphone and an expansion card (sold separately).

- 1 Go to the workbook list.
- 2 Highlight a file.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **File > Rename/Move**.
- 4 Select **Name** and enter a new name for the workbook.
- 5 Select the **Folder** list, and then select the folder to which you want to move the workbook.
- 6 Select the **Location** list, and then select **Main memory** or **Storage Card**. The Storage Card option appears only if you have an expansion card (sold separately) inserted into your smartphone.
- 7 Press **OK** .

TIP When you go to a folder, you can easily search your files by sorting by type.

Deleting cells, rows, and columns

- 1 Open the workbook containing the elements you want to delete.
- 2 Highlight the area you want to delete.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Edit > Delete Cells**.
- 4 Select how you want to remove the elements:

Shift cells left: Deletes the highlighted cells and moves all cells on their right to the left.

Shift cells up: Deletes the highlighted cells and moves all cells below them up.

Entire row: Deletes the entire row(s) in which the highlighted cells are located, and moves all rows below up.

Entire column: Deletes the entire column(s) in which the highlighted cells are located, and moves all columns on their right to the left.


NOTE Excel Mobile adjusts formulas to reflect the new cell locations. However, a formula that refers to a deleted cell displays the #REF! error value.

- 5 Select **OK**.

TIP To delete a workbook, go to the workbook list and highlight the workbook you want to delete. Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Delete**. Select **Yes** to confirm.

TIP To delete a worksheet, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Format > Modify Sheets**. Highlight the worksheet you want to delete, and then select **Delete**. Select **Yes** and press **OK**.

Customizing Excel Mobile

- 1 Go to the workbook list.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.
- 3 Set any of the following options:

Template for new workbook:

Specifies the default template for new workbooks.

Save new workbooks to: Specifies where new workbooks are stored.



Files to display in list view: Specifies which types of files appear in the workbook list.

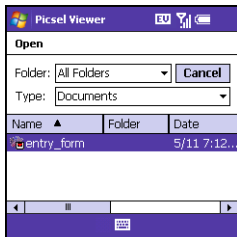
- 4 Press **OK** .

PDF Viewer

PicseL PDF Viewer lets you view PDF files whether they are saved to your smartphone, attached to email messages, stored on an expansion card (sold separately) inserted into your smartphone's expansion card slot, or downloaded from the web. You can customize the document display.

Opening a file


- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **PDF Viewer** .
- 3 Select the **Folder** list, and then select the folder containing the file you want to open. If you're not sure which folder the file is in, select **All Folders**.




- 4 Select the **Type** list, and then select the type of file you want to open.
- 5 Select the file you want.

TIP Select the **Name**, **Folder**, or **Date** column heading to sort the displayed files by that heading. This can help you find the file you want more quickly.

TIP To close the Open screen without making a selection, select **Cancel**.

- 6 (Optional) Optimize your viewing of the file by doing any of the following:
 - To switch between zoom mode and pan mode, press **Center** .
 - In zoom mode, to zoom in and out while viewing the PDF file, press **Up** ▲, or **Down** ▼.
 - In pan mode, to pan the display in a given direction, press **Right** ►, **Left** ◀, **Up** ▲, or **Down** ▼.


TIP To see which mode you are in, press **Show Mode** (left softkey) to display the mode icon. Press **Hide Mode** (left softkey) to hide the mode icon.


- To rotate the displayed page, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Page > Rotate**.

TIP When you have a file open, to open a different file you have recently viewed, press **Menu** (right softkey), and then select **Recent > [the name of the file you want]**.

Moving around in PDF files

To move around within a PDF file, do either of the following:

To go to the next or previous page in the file: Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Page > Next Page** or **Page > Previous Page**.

To go to the first or last page in the file: Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Page > First page** or **Page > Last page**.

Customizing the display


You can choose between two views for displaying PDF files.

- 1 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Page**.
- 2 Select one of the following options:

Fit to width: Resizes the file so that the width of the file matches the width of the screen; you may need to scroll up or down to view the entire document.

Fit to page: Resizes the file so that the entire file—both width and height—fits on one screen.

Customizing PDF Viewer

- 1 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select any of the following options:

Clear History: Deletes all files from the Recent list (see [Opening a file](#)).

Files: Specifies which file types can be opened with PDF Viewer.

About: Contains information on the PDF Viewer application.



Your application and info management tools

Your Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone comes equipped with a variety of tools for managing and organizing your information. Get the most out of your smartphone: Install some of the thousands of business, education, or leisure-time applications available. After you use your smartphone to create or capture important business and personal information, use one of several options to share the info with others. Insert expansion cards (sold separately) for a compact and limitless answer to the storage dilemma. And because there's one on your smartphone, you never need to carry a separate calculator.

Benefits

- Locate info in any application
- Install applications, games, and other software
- Keep others up-to-date with meaningful business and personal information
- Store, carry, and exchange info
- Always have a calculator with you

In this chapter

Finding information	227
Installing applications	229
Removing applications	232
Sharing information	233
Beaming information	233
Using expansion cards	235
Calculator	240

Finding information

Quickly find who or what you're looking for by using one of these search features:

Lookup: Find and dial your contacts by name or phone number. See [Dialing by contact name](#) for details.

Search: Look through the text in all the applications on your smartphone.

File Explorer: Browse through the files and folders on your smartphone or on an expansion card (sold separately) inserted into your smartphone.



Global Address List Lookup: Look up names in your online corporate address list.

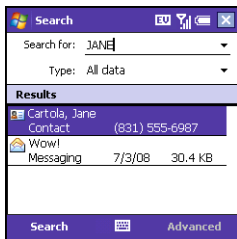
Email message search: Display only those messages whose senders, recipients, or subjects match the text you enter (see [Finding messages](#)).

TIP For information on opening and closing apps, see [Opening and closing applications](#).

Using Search

Search for files and other items stored in the My Documents folder on your smartphone or on an expansion card (sold separately) inserted into your smartphone. You can search by file name or by words located in the item. For example, you can search for words within notes, appointments, contacts, and tasks.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Search** .





- 3 Select **Search for**, and then enter the file name, word, or other info you want to find.

TIP If you've looked for an item before, select the **Search for** list, and then select the item in the list.

TIP When two or more words are entered in the Search for field, the search results contains only items that contain all of the words.



- 4 Select the **Type** list, and then select the kind of information you want to find.

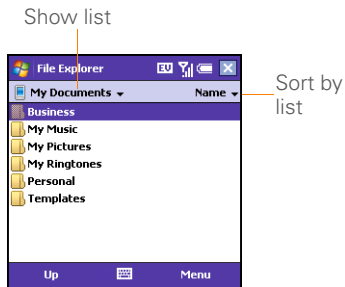
TIP If you are searching for information in certain applications, such as Messaging or Word Mobile, select **Advanced** for more search options.

- 5 Press **Search**  (left softkey).
- 6 Use the **5-way**  to select and view an item from the results of the search. A storage card symbol appears next to the names of files that are located on an expansion card.

Exploring files and folders




You can use File Explorer to browse the contents of folders on your smartphone or on an expansion card (sold separately) inserted into your smartphone. The root folder on your smartphone is named My Device. My Device is similar to My Computer (Windows XP) or Computer (Windows Vista) on your computer.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **File Explorer** .
- 3 Select the folder you want to explore. If the folder you want is not displayed, tap the **Show** list in the upper-left and select **My Device** to view all folders.



DID YOU KNOW? When the items in a folder are displayed, you can sort them by name, date, size, or type. Select the **Sort by** list in the upper-right, and then select the sort method.

TIP The storage card symbol appears next to the names of files that are stored on an expansion card.

- 4 Do any of the following:
- To open an item, select it.
 - To quickly delete, rename, beam, or email an item, highlight the item, press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and then select the appropriate command.
 - To move a file to another folder, highlight the item, press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and select **Cut** or **Copy**. Open the destination folder, press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and then select **Paste**.
 - To highlight multiple items, tap and drag the stylus.

IMPORTANT Do not delete any files that you cannot identify. These files may be

required for your smartphone to function properly.

Installing applications

Your smartphone comes with several built-in and ready-to-use applications. You can also install any of the additional software included on the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD as well as other third-party applications that are compatible with Microsoft Windows Mobile® 6 Professional edition devices, such as business software, games, and more.

Applications you download to your computer are likely to be in a compressed format such as ZIP. If the file is compressed, you can use a decompression utility on your computer, such as WinZip, to decompress the file before you install the application on your smartphone, or you can copy the compressed file to your smartphone and select it in File Explorer to decompress it.

These instructions tell you how to install basic files onto your smartphone. Some

software uses an installer or wizard to guide you through the process. For details, consult the documentation that came with the software.

TIP If an application does not have a Microsoft Mobile to Market certificate, you see a message indicating that the application is untrusted. If this occurs, you can indicate whether you want to continue the installation.

Installing bonus software from the CD

The Windows Mobile Getting Started CD includes several bonus software applications that you can install on your smartphone. You can install these applications when you install the desktop software, or you can install them later.

- 1 Insert the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD into the CD drive on your computer.
- 2 Click **Add Programs** (Windows XP) or **Bonus Software** (Windows Vista).
- 3 Click the name of the application you want to install.
- 4 Click **Install** (on the right side of the screen).

- 5 (Optional) Repeat steps 3 and 4 to install additional applications.
- 6 Synchronize your smartphone with your computer to install the application(s) on your smartphone.

Installing third-party applications

When installing third-party applications, note the following:







- Install only apps that are designed for Microsoft Windows Mobile 6 Professional. Apps designed for Microsoft Windows Mobile 6 Standard or any edition of Windows Mobile 5.x software are not compatible with your smartphone.
- If you can try a free or trial version of the software before purchasing it, you can test it first to make sure it works properly.

NOTE If you encounter a problem with a third-party application (such as an error message), contact the application's vendor. For general troubleshooting of third-party applications, see [Third-party applications](#).

DID YOU KNOW? You can purchase a third-party application that lets you run Palm OS® applications on your smartphone.

Installing applications from the Internet

You can use Internet Explorer Mobile to install Windows Mobile apps in the CAB file format directly from the Internet. For files in any other format except CAB, you must first download the files to your computer and then install them to your smartphone by synchronizing.

- 1 Make sure your phone is on and that you are in a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Internet Explorer**.
- 3 Go to the page that contains the link to the application you want to download.
- 4 Press **Left**  or **Right**  to highlight the link to the file, and then press **Center**  to start the download process.
- 5 When the download has finished, press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 6 Select **File Explorer** .

- 7 Go to the **My Documents** folder in File Explorer.
- 8 Select the file you downloaded to start the installation program.

Installing applications from your computer

BEFORE YOU BEGIN To install an application from your computer to your smartphone, you must first install the desktop synchronization software on your computer (see [Installing ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP](#) or [Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista](#)).

- 1 Connect your smartphone to your computer to synchronize and install the application(s) on your smartphone.
- 2 Open **My Computer** or **Windows Explorer** on your computer.
- 3 Double-click the icon representing your smartphone.
- 4 Copy the application file(s) into the folder.



Installing applications onto an expansion card

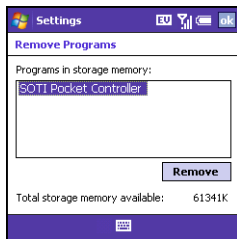
BEFORE YOU BEGIN To install an application from your computer to an expansion card, you must first install the desktop synchronization software on your computer (see [Installing ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP](#) or [Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista](#)).

- 1 Insert the expansion card (sold separately) into the expansion card slot (see [Inserting and removing expansion cards](#)).
- 2 Connect your smartphone to your computer using the USB sync cable.
- 3 Open **My Computer** or **Windows Explorer** on your computer.
- 4 Double-click the icon representing your smartphone.
- 5 Navigate to the folder representing the expansion card.
- 6 Copy the application file(s) into the expansion card folder.

Removing applications

To free up memory on your smartphone, you can remove applications that you no longer use. You can remove only applications, patches, and extensions that you install; you cannot remove the built-in applications that reside in the read-only memory (ROM) portion of your smartphone.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Remove Programs** .




- 3 Select the application that you want to remove.

DID YOU KNOW? Built-in applications that cannot be deleted are not listed in the Remove Programs list.

- 4 Select **Remove**.
- 5 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

Sharing information

Your smartphone comes equipped with a variety of options for sharing information, so that you can choose the quickest, most convenient way to send your info or to receive info from another device.

- In many applications, you can send a file or an entry by email or beaming. Open the app to the file or entry list and highlight the item you want to send. Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select the **Send** or **Beam** option.
- In Microsoft Outlook®, you can insert a picture or attach a note or other file to

an email. You can also receive pictures and attachments (see [Your email](#)).

- You can attach a picture, video, or sound file to a multimedia message (see [Creating and sending a multimedia message](#)).
- You can synchronize to share info between your smartphone and your computer or between your smartphone and Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 or 2007 (see [Synchronizing information](#)).
- If you are near someone, you can beam files and applications between your smartphone and your neighbor's device using the IR port or Bluetooth® wireless technology (see [Beaming information](#)).
- You can also store files on an expansion card and share the expansion card (see [Using expansion cards](#)).

Beaming information

Your smartphone is equipped with an IR (infrared) port that enables you to beam information to another device with an IR port. The IR port is located on the top of

your smartphone near the antenna. You can also beam using the Bluetooth wireless technology on your smartphone.

The normal range for beaming with IR is about 8 inches (20 centimeters). The maximum range for beaming with Bluetooth technology is about 30 feet (10 meters). Performance and range are affected by physical obstacles, radio interference from nearby electronic equipment, and other factors.

TIP For best results, the path between the two devices must be clear of obstacles, and both devices kept stationary. If you have difficulty beaming, shorten the distance and avoid bright sunlight.

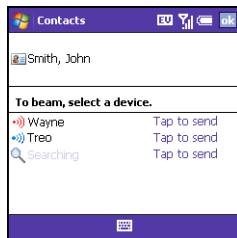
DID YOU KNOW? The type of information you can beam depends on the type of device you are beaming to. Other Windows Mobile 6 Professional devices are always compatible with your Treo 700wx smartphone.

Beaming an entry or file

BEFORE YOU BEGIN To beam using Bluetooth technology, make sure your smartphone has the Bluetooth feature

turned on (see [Entering basic Bluetooth settings](#)).

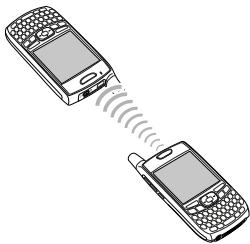
- 1 Highlight the entry or file you want to beam.
- 2 Press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **Beam...** (the menu item changes names based on the type of item you highlighted).
- 3 Do one of the following:



Bluetooth: When the name of the receiving device appears, select **[the device name]/Tap to send** to begin the transfer. A blue icon indicates a Bluetooth connection.

IR: Point the IR port on your smartphone directly at the IR port of the receiving

device. Select **[the device name]/Tap to send**. A red icon indicates an IR connection.





- 4 Wait for **Done** to appear next to the name of the receiving device before you continue using your smartphone.

TIP The regional setting determines the list of characters that can be used when info is beamed between devices. If you try to send or receive a character that is not on the list, it appears as a question mark (see [Setting display formats](#)).

Turning on the option to receive beamed information

By default, the option to receive beamed information on your smartphone is turned

off. You need to turn the beam option on before you can receive information being beamed from another device.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Beam** .
- 3 Check the **Receive all incoming beams** box.

Receiving beamed information

- 1 Turn on your screen if it is not already on.
- 2 If you are beaming over an IR connection, point the IR port on your smartphone directly at the IR port of the transmitting device.
- 3 When the Receiving Data message appears, select **Yes** to receive the beam.

Using expansion cards

The expansion card slot on your smartphone enables you to add SD cards

and MultiMediaCard cards to extend the storage capacity of your smartphone. For example, SD or MultiMediaCard expansion cards can store the following:

- Pictures
- Games
- Videos
- Applications
- MP3 audio files
- Databases
- Email attachments

NOTE Your smartphone does not support SDHC (SD High Capacity) expansion cards. These cards typically have a capacity of over 2GB.

You can also purchase SDIO cards that contain software such as presentation modules. When purchasing an SDIO card, make sure that the card is compatible with the Treo 700wx smartphone.

Expansion cards are sold separately.

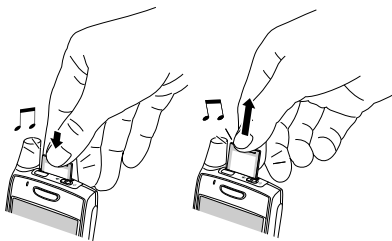
TIP Your smartphone comes with a dummy card inside the expansion card slot, to protect the slot. When you do not have a functioning card inside the slot, reinsert the dummy card to protect the slot opening.

TIP SD cards are faster than MultiMediaCard cards for reading and writing information.

TIP We recommend that you purchase preformatted expansion cards. To format a card on your own, you need to connect a card reader (sold separately) to your computer.

Inserting and removing expansion cards

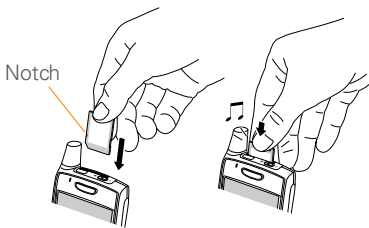
- 1 Press down and release the dummy card.
- 2 After you feel the expansion card slot eject the dummy card, remove the card from the slot.



- 3 To insert an expansion card, hold your smartphone with the screen facing you

and hold the card with the label facing you. The notch on the card should be in the lower-left corner, next to the antenna.



- 4 Insert the card into the expansion card slot until you feel it lock into place and you hear the confirmation tone.



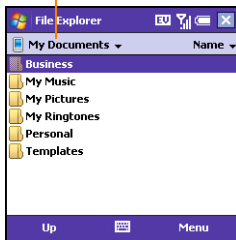
Opening applications on an expansion card

After you insert an expansion card into the expansion card slot, you can open any of the applications stored on the expansion card.

TIP To run an application on an expansion card, your smartphone must have enough free space in the internal memory to run the application.

- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 3 Select **File Explorer** .
- 4 Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left and select **Storage Card**.

Show list




- 5 Select the application you want to open.

Saving files to an expansion card

You can save space on your smartphone by saving files to an expansion card. For example, when you create new Word Mobile documents, notes, Excel Mobile workbooks, pictures, videos, and audio files, you can save them directly to an expansion card. Saving files to an

expansion card also makes it easy to share those files with others. (Some applications may not support this feature.)

- 1 Insert an expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Open the application from which you want to save the info.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Options**.
- 4 Select the option for where to save info, and then select **Storage Card**. The option name changes depending on the application you are in.



TIP If you don't see a Save to option on the Options screen, look on the other tabs (if present). If you still can't find a Save to list, the application may not support this feature.

- 5 Press **OK** .



Moving info between your smartphone and an expansion card within an application

In certain applications—for example, Pictures & Videos and the Office Mobile applications—you can move files directly to another location. For applications that do

not support this feature, see [Moving info between your smartphone and an expansion card using File Explorer](#).




- 1 Insert an expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Open the application from which you want to move the info.
- 3 Go to the list view and highlight the file or application you want to move. If you do not see the item, tap the **Show** list in the upper-left and select **All Folders**, then navigate to the folder containing the item.
- 4 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Rename/Move**.
- 5 Select the **Location** list, and then select where you want to move the info: **Storage Card** or **Main memory**.
- 6 Press **OK** .

Moving info between your smartphone and an expansion card using File Explorer




- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 3 Select **File Explorer** .

- 4 Highlight the file or application you want to copy or move (see [Exploring files and folders](#)).




TIP Your applications are usually located in the My Device/Program Files folder.

- 5 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Edit > Copy** or **Edit > Cut**.
- 6 Go to the folder where you want to place the selected item.
- 7 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Edit > Paste**.
- 8 Press **OK** .

Viewing available expansion card memory

- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 3 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Memory** .
- 4 Select the **Storage Card** tab.
- 5 Press **OK** .



Exploring files on an expansion card



- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 3 Select **File Explorer** .
- 4 Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left and select **Storage Card**.
- 5 Select the folder or files you want to view.
- 6 Press **OK** .

Renaming an expansion card

If you change the contents of an expansion card, you may at some point want to rename the card to better match its contents.


TIP Before copying information to or renaming the files or folders on an expansion card, or renaming the card itself, make sure the card is not write-protected. See the instructions that came with your card for details.

- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 3 Select **File Explorer** .

- 4 Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left and select **My Device**.
- 5 Highlight the current expansion card name (Storage Card by default).
- 6 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Rename**.
- 7 Enter a new name for the card.
- 8 Press **OK** .

Encrypting an expansion card

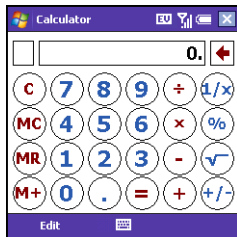
When you encrypt an expansion card, the info on the card can be read only by your smartphone—so no one can see what's on the card if it gets lost or stolen.

- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 3 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Encryption**.
- 4 Check the **Encrypt files placed on storage cards** box.




NOTE If your organization enforces an encryption policy, you can see that the box is checked but cannot uncheck it.


Calculator


You can use Calculator for basic arithmetic calculations, such as addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division.




Performing calculations


- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Calculator** .
- 3 Tap the onscreen numbers and perform calculations, including the following:
 -  Clears the last digit in a multi-digit entry.

 Clears the current calculation or the displayed number. You can also press **C** on the keyboard.

 Calculates the reciprocal of a number.

 Calculates percentage.

 Calculates the square root of a number.

 Switches a number between negative and positive.

TIP You can paste numbers into Calculator as well as copy calculation results to be pasted into another app. Press **Edit** (left softkey) and select **Paste** or **Copy**.




TIP You can also turn on Option Lock and use the number keys to enter numbers.

TIP For more advanced calculations, use Excel Mobile. See [Excel Mobile](#) for details.

Using the Calculator memory

- To store a displayed number, tap the box to the left of the entry box or press **M**. An M appears in the box.

DID YOU KNOW? When you store a number in memory, it replaces the number that is currently stored.

- To add the displayed number to the number stored in memory, tap  or press **P**.
- To display the number stored in memory, tap  or press **R**.
- To clear the memory, tap  or press **L**.



Your personal settings

Customizing is optional. But why not personalize your Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone to make it match your lifestyle and work even harder for you?

You can easily customize the sounds, fonts, screen colors, and more on your smartphone. Take advantage of various levels of security. Prevent making an accidental (and expensive) phone call by locking the keyboard. Some preference settings can help extend the life of your battery. There are lots of ways to make your smartphone work better for you.

Benefits



- Conserve power
- Make your screen easy to read
- Secure your phone and your data
- Streamline smartphone use

In this chapter


Today screen settings	245
System sound settings	246
Display and appearance settings	248
Application settings	251
Locking your smartphone and info	256
System settings	260
Connection settings	266
Submitting usage information to Microsoft	268

Today screen settings

Selecting your Today screen background



- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Today** .

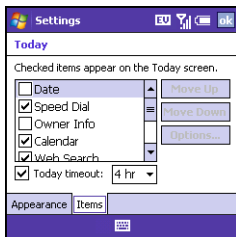


- 3 On the Appearance tab, check the **Use this picture as the background** box.
- 4 Select **Browse**.
- 5 Select the picture you want to use.
- 6 Press **OK** .



TIP To change the color theme for your smartphone, select a new theme from the Appearance tab in Today Settings (see [Changing the system color scheme](#)).

Selecting which items appear on your Today screen

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Today** .
- 3 Select the **Items** tab.



- 4 Check the boxes next to the items you want to appear on your Today screen, and uncheck any items that you do not want to appear.
- 5 (Optional) Highlight an item and select **Move Up** or **Move Down** to change the order in which items appear on the Today screen.



- 6 (Optional) Highlight an item and select **Options** (if available) to configure the settings for the item. Press **OK**  to return to Today Settings.
- 7 Press **OK** .

DID YOU KNOW? There are lots of third-party plug-ins available for your Today screen.

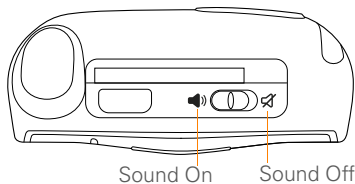
System sound settings

When you're in a meeting, at the movies, or anywhere that silence is required, you can immediately silence all sounds on your smartphone, including Calendar notifications and system sounds. This does not mute the speaker during phone calls.

Silencing sounds

- 1 Slide the **Ringer** switch to **Sound Off** . The smartphone vibrates briefly.
- 2 To hear all sounds again, slide the **Ringer** switch to **Sound On** .



When you slide the Ringer switch back to the Sound On position, it restores the previous sound settings. For example, if the smartphone ring volume is set to the loudest setting and you slide the Ringer switch to Sound Off, you do not hear the smartphone ring. When you move the Ringer switch back to Sound On, the smartphone ring volume is still set to the loudest setting.

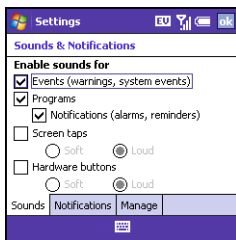


TIP Can't get music to play out of the built-in MP3 player? Check the Ringer switch. If it's set to Sound Off, you won't be able to hear music.

DID YOU KNOW? Your smartphone includes a silent alarm that can vibrate even when the Ringer switch is set to Sound Off.

Selecting Sounds & Notifications

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Sounds & Notifications** .
- 3 On the Sounds tab, set any of the following options:



Events: Turns sounds on/off for system warnings and error messages.

Programs: Turns sounds on/off in the applications on your smartphone.

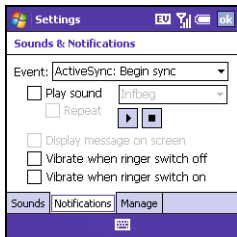
Notifications: Turns alarms and reminders on/off in the applications on your smartphone.

Screen taps: Turns sounds associated with tapping the screen on/off, and sets the volume level when this sound is turned on.

Hardware buttons: Turns sounds associated with pressing buttons on/off, and sets the volume level when this sound is turned on.

TIP To record, preview, delete, and send sounds, select the **Manage** tab. To add an existing sound file—for example, a sound file you downloaded—to the list, press **Menu** (right softkey) select **Add**, and then navigate to and select the file. To record a sound, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select **New Sound**. To play a sound, select it and press **Play** (left softkey). To delete a sound, highlight it and press **Backspace**. To send a sound, highlight it, press **Menu** (right softkey), and then select **Beam Sound** or **Send Sound**.

- 4 Select the **Notifications** tab and set any of the following options:



Event: Specifies the action for which you want to change the settings. The remaining options vary based on the event you select.

Play sound: Lets you turn the sound on/off for the selected event. To select a different sound, select the list to the right of this setting, and then select a different sound. To preview the sound, select **Play sound**, and then select **Play**.

Repeat: Indicates whether the sound plays more than once, if turned on.






Display message on screen: Indicates whether a notification message appears onscreen for the selected event.

Vibrate when ringer switch off/on: Indicates whether your smartphone vibrates to notify you about the selected event.



- 5 Press **OK** .




Display and appearance settings

Adjusting the brightness

- 1 Press **Option**  and then press **P** .
- 2 Press **Left**  and **Right**  to adjust the brightness.
- 3 Press **OK** .



Changing the text size and clarity

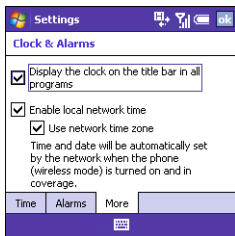
- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Screen** .
- 3 Select the **Text Size** tab.

- 4 Press **Left** ◀ and **Right** ▶ to adjust the text size.
 - 5 Select the **Clear Type** tab.
 - 6 To smooth the edges of screen fonts, check the **Enable Clear Type** box.
 - 7 Press **OK** .
- 4 To display the clock, check the **Display the clock on the title bar in all programs** box.
 - 5 Press **OK** .
 - 6 To change the clock display format, tap and hold the clock, and then select **Analog** or **Digital**. If you select analog format, a clock icon  appears displaying the time.



Displaying the clock

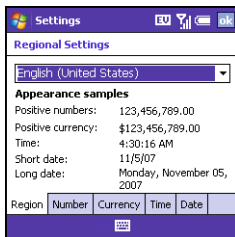
You can display a clock at the top of every screen. You can also choose between a digital and an analog clock display.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Clock & Alarms** .
- 3 Select the **More** tab.




Setting display formats

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Regional Settings** .






- 3 On the **Region** tab, select a region from the list. The region selection determines all display formats (date, time, and so

on) on your smartphone unless you use another Regional Settings field to select a different format for a specific type of display item.




- 4 (Optional) Select any of the following tabs to customize the format settings:
 - Number:** Sets the decimal symbol and number of decimal places, the digit grouping symbol and group size, list separators, negative number sign symbol and format, leading zero display, and measurement system (metric vs. U.S.).
 - Currency:** Sets the currency symbol and position, the decimal symbol and number of places, digit grouping symbol and group size, and negative number format.
 - Time:** Sets the time style, separators, and AM and PM symbols.
 - Date:** Sets the short date style, separators, long date style, and calendar type.
- 5 Press **OK** .

Aligning the screen to correct tapping problems

Occasionally, your screen may need to be readjusted. You know your screen needs adjustment when the wrong feature is activated when you tap the screen. To fix the problem, align the screen.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Screen** .
- 3 On the General tab, select **Align Screen**.
- 4 Tap the screen where indicated.
- 5 Press **OK** .




Changing the system color scheme

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Today** .
- 3 On the Appearance tab, select a theme in the list.
- 4 Press **OK** .

TIP You can also set the background for your Today screen (see [Selecting your Today screen background](#)).

Changing screen orientation

Landscape orientations are determined by which hand you would hold the stylus in.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Screen** .
- 3 Select the **General** tab.
- 4 Select an orientation:
 - **Portrait**
 - **Landscape (right-handed)**
 - **Landscape (left-handed)**
- 5 Press **OK** .

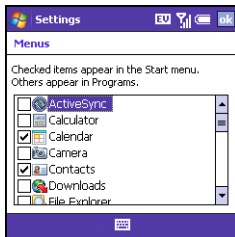
Application settings


Arranging the Start menu

You can change the seven applications listed on the Start menu. You can still access the remaining applications by selecting Programs from the Start menu, and then selecting the application's icon.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.

- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Menus** .





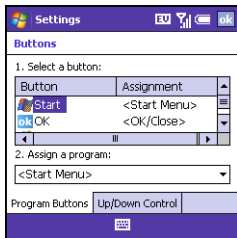
- 3 Check the boxes next to the applications you want to see in the Start menu.
- 4 Press **OK** .









TIP Don't forget the six icons across the top of the Start menu. They're the apps you opened most recently, and it's easy to get back to them: just use the **5-way** to select one of the icons.




Reassigning buttons

You can use Buttons Settings to select which applications to associate with many of the buttons and key combinations on your smartphone.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Buttons** .




- 3 On the Program Buttons tab, highlight the button or key combination you want to change in the Button list. The hardware buttons are mapped to the following items:
 - **Start**  = Start menu
 - **OK**  = OK/Close
 - **Option**  + **Phone/Send**  = Internet Explorer
 - **Option**  + **Start**  = Calendar
 - **Option**  + **OK**  = Task Manager
 - **Hold Side** = Windows Media Player

- 4 Select the **Assign a program** list, and then select the application you want to assign to the button or key combination you selected in step 3.
- 5 Select the **Up/Down Control** tab and adjust the settings for the **Up**  and **Down**  buttons on the 5-way.
- 6 Press **OK** .

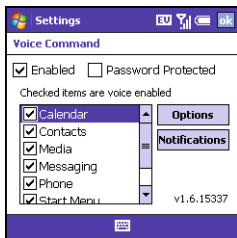
Setting up voice commands

IMPORTANT The Voice Command application is available only for English, French, and German.

Voice commands enable you to use speech to execute some commands on the Start menu and the Programs screen.

- 1 Assign the **Hold Side** button to Voice Command. See [Reassigning buttons](#) for details.
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.

3 On the Personal tab, select **Voice Command** .




- 4 Check the **Enabled** box.
- 5 Select the items you want to enable. If an item is highlighted and the Options button is active, select **Options** to choose the features you want enabled for the highlighted item.
- 6 Select **Notifications**, and then select the options for how you want to receive voice command notifications.

Using voice commands



IMPORTANT Do not use voice commands in your car until you read the End user notice about this kind of usage; see page ii

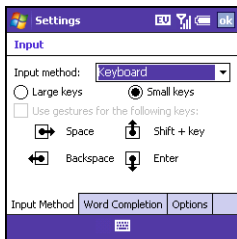
of *Quick Reference*, included in your smartphone package, for information.

- 1 Set the **Ringer** switch at the top of your smartphone to **Sound On** .
- 2 Hold your smartphone about nine inches (230mm) away from your mouth, and then press and release the assigned **Voice Command** button (see [Setting up voice commands](#)). A tone plays and a microphone icon appears at the top of your screen.
- 3 In a clear voice say the command. For example:
 - To access Help, say “Help.” After Voice Command finishes speaking, a microphone icon appears at the top of your screen. Say your answer. For example, say “General” to access general Help topics.
 - To access your Calendar, say “Start Calendar.”
 - To access your music, say “Start Windows Media.” After Voice Command finishes speaking, a microphone icon appears at the top of your screen. Say your answer.

TIP You can move quickly through voice commands by stopping the voice command response before it finishes. When Voice Command responds, you can press the **Voice Command** button before it completes the question. After the microphone icon is visible, you may say your answer.

Setting input options

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Input** .
- 3 On the Input Method tab, set any of the following options:



NOTE The Input Method options you specify apply only to entering info using the screen. You can still enter info using your

smartphone's keyboard regardless of the onscreen input method you choose.

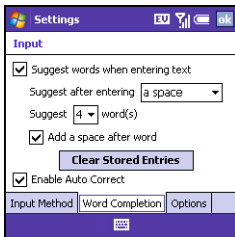
Input method: Specifies which onscreen input method you want to use:

- **Block Recognizer:** Use a single stroke to write letters, numbers, symbols, and punctuation, which are then converted into typed text. Use gestures to enter Return and Backspace.
- **Keyboard:** Tap keys on the onscreen keyboard to enter text.
- **Letter Recognizer:** Write individual letters, numbers, and punctuation, which are converted into typed text.

Large/Small keys: If you selected Keyboard, select whether to use large or small onscreen keys. If you select Large keys, check the box if you want to use gestures for the space, backspace, shift, and enter keys.

Options: If you selected Letter Recognizer, select Options and select the options you want.

- 4 Select the **Word Completion** tab and set any of the following options:



Suggest words when entering text:

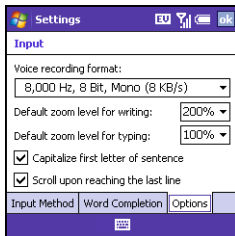
Indicates whether word suggestions appear as you enter text. You can also specify how many letters you want to enter before a suggestion appears, how many suggestions you want to see, and whether a space appears after you insert a suggested word.

TIP To enter a suggested word, press **Down** to highlight the suggestion, and then press **Center** to accept it.

Clear Stored Entries: Deletes the database of word suggestions.

Enable Auto Correct: Indicates whether common misspellings such as “teh” are corrected automatically.

- 5 Select the **Options** tab and set any of the following options:



Voice recording format: Specifies the format in which you save voice notes.

Default zoom level for writing: Specifies the initial size of text entered from onscreen writing methods.

Default zoom level for typing: Specifies the initial size of text entered using the onscreen keyboard.

Capitalize first letter of sentence:

Specifies whether the first letter of a sentence automatically appears in uppercase, without requiring you to press a Shift key.

Scroll upon reaching the last line:

Specifies whether the display automatically scrolls when you select the last line of visible info.

6 Press **OK** .

Locking your smartphone and info

Your smartphone includes several features that help you protect it from inadvertent use and keep your information private. The built-in security software lets you use your smartphone for emergency calls, such as dialing 911, even if it is locked.

Keypad: Manually disables all buttons and the screen's touch-sensitive feature to prevent accidental presses in your briefcase or pocket.

Auto-Keypad and touchscreen

lockout: Automatically enables Keypad after a period of inactivity and lets you disable the screen's touch-sensitive feature during an active call.




Phone Lock: Requires a Lock Code to turn on your phone so you can make and answer calls.

System password lock: Requires a password to see any information on your smartphone.

TIP To avoid accidentally pressing onscreen buttons while you're holding your smartphone up to your ear to speak, you can disable the screen's touch-sensitive feature during active calls. When the screen's touch-sensitive feature is disabled, you must use the 5-way navigator to access items on the screen.

Locking your keyboard (Keypad)



By default, your keyboard locks when you turn off the screen so that you don't accidentally press buttons or activate screen items while your smartphone is in a pocket or bag.

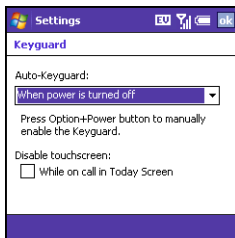
- To dismiss Keyguard when you turn on the screen, press **Center** .
- To manually turn on Keyguard when your smartphone screen is on, press **Option**  + **Power/End** .

TIP If you're using a headset or hands-free device and your smartphone is in a pocket or bag, you can manually turn on Keyguard during a call to prevent accidental key presses.

Turning on Auto-Keyguard




Auto-Keyguard enables you to configure the Keyguard feature.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Keyguard** .
- 3 Select the **Auto-Keyguard** list, and then disable the Auto-Keyguard feature or set the period of inactivity that passes before the keyboard automatically locks.



- 4 Press **OK** .

Locking your screen



- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Keyguard** .
- 3 Check or uncheck the **While on call in Today screen** box to determine whether the screen's touch-sensitive feature is enabled during a call.
- 4 Press **OK** .

Locking your phone

You can lock the phone feature of your smartphone to prevent unauthorized use of your mobile account. When your phone is locked, you must enter the lock code to

turn on your phone and to make or receive calls, except for emergency numbers.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).


- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Phone** .
- 3 Select the **Security** tab.



- 4 Select the **Auto-lock** list, and select either **When phone turned off** or **Immediately**.
- 5 Enter your current lock code or the default lock code and then select **OK**.
- 6 Select **Change Lock Code**.

- 7 Enter your current lock code or the default lock code, and then enter your new lock code twice to confirm it.

TIP The default lock code is the last four digits of your wireless phone number, or try 0000. If none of these work, call Verizon Wireless for assistance.

- 8 Select **OK** to return to Phone Settings.
- 9 Press **OK** .



Your phone locks when you turn it off and turn it back on or immediately, depending on the option you selected in step 4. If you try to make a call when your phone is locked, a dial pad appears for you to enter your lock code to unlock the phone. You do not need to enter your lock code to answer a call.

Locking your smartphone

To protect your personal information, you can lock the system so that you need to enter your password to access any of your information or use other features of your smartphone.


IMPORTANT If you lock your system, you must enter the exact password to unlock it.

If you enter an incorrect password, you are given another chance. Each time an incorrect password is entered, you are given progressively longer time periods between your chances to enter the password. If you forget the password, you need to perform a hard reset to resume using your smartphone. Performing a hard reset deletes all the entries in your smartphone. However, you can restore all previously synchronized info the next time you sync (see [Synchronizing information](#)).

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Lock** .
- 3 On the Password tab, check the **Prompt if device unused for** box to turn on the password feature.
- 4 Select the first list, and then select how long a period of inactivity must pass before you are prompted to enter a password to unlock the system.
- 5 Select the **Password type** list, and then select a format for your password:
Strong alphanumeric: A strong alphanumeric password must contain at least 7 characters and must contain a combination of letters, numerals, and

punctuation. You must press Option or Alt before entering numerals or punctuation.



Simple PIN: A simple PIN must contain at least 4 characters and includes numerals only. You do not need to press Option before entering the PIN numerals.

- 6 Select **Password** and enter your password.
- 7 Select **Confirm** and enter the password again.
- 8 (Optional) Select the **Hint** tab and enter a hint to help you recall your password.
- 9 Press **OK** .

TIP If you lock your smartphone and use a Simple PIN as the password, you can dial an emergency number by entering the number in the password field and pressing **Phone/Send**. You do not need to press Option before entering the number. However, if you select Strong alphanumeric as the password type, you must first press **Option** twice before entering an emergency number in the password field.


Entering owner information

You can enter personal information that you want to associate with your smartphone, such as your name, company name, and phone number. You can also set whether you want this information to appear when you turn on your smartphone. If you lose your smartphone, this feature can help the person who finds it return it to you.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the Personal tab, select **Owner Information** .
- 3 On the Identification tab, enter any of the information you want to include.



- 4 Select the **Notes** tab and enter any additional text you want to include.

- 5 Select the **Options** tab and check the boxes to indicate which info (if any) you want to appear on the screen when you turn on your smartphone.
- 6 Press **OK** .



TIP You can also display your Owner Information on your Today screen. See [Selecting which items appear on your Today screen](#) for details.

System settings

Setting the date and time

Use Clock & Alarms Settings to set the time zone, time, and date for your home location and a location that you visit.

To set the display format for the date and time, see [Setting display formats](#).

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Clock & Alarms** .
- 3 On the Time tab, select **Home**.



- 4 Select the first list, and then select the time zone for your home location.
- 5 Select the hour, and then press **Up** ▲ or **Down** ▼ to increase or decrease the hour setting. Repeat this process for the minute, seconds, and AM/PM settings.
- 6 Select the month, and then press **Up** ▲ or **Down** ▼ to increase or decrease the month setting. Repeat this process for the date and year settings.
- 7 (Optional) Select **Visiting** and set the info for a location that you visit often.
- 8 Press **OK** (Ⓞ).
- 9 If prompted, select **Yes** to accept your changes.



Synchronizing the date, time, and time zone with the network

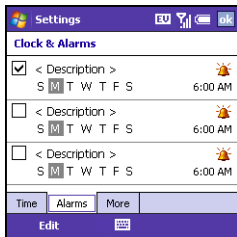
You can set your smartphone to synchronize the date, time, and time zone with the Verizon Wireless network whenever your phone is on and you are inside a coverage area.

- 1 Press **Start** (Ⓜ) and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Clock & Alarms** (🕒).
- 3 Select the **More** tab.
- 4 To keep the time on your smartphone synchronized with the time on the network at your current location, check the **Enable local network time** box. Uncheck the box for your smartphone to use its internal time setting regardless of the network at your current location.
- 5 To keep the date and time on your smartphone synchronized with the date and time in the time zone of your current location, check the **Use network time zone** box. Uncheck the box for your smartphone to use the internal location setting regardless of the network at your current location.



Setting system alarms

System alarms let you set alarms that are not associated with a task or appointment. For example, you can use your smartphone as an alarm clock when you travel, or set alarms to remind you when it's time to take medication or pick up the kids.


- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Clock & Alarms** .
- 3 Select the **Alarms** tab.



- 4 Check a box to turn on that alarm.
- 5 Select the description next to the box you checked and enter a description for the alarm.

- 6 Tap the days of the week you want the alarm to go off. You can select multiple days for each alarm.
- 7 Tap the displayed time, select the time you want the alarm to go off, and then press **OK** .
- 8 Select the **alarm**  icon, and then check the boxes to select how you want the alarm to go off. You can choose a flashing light, a single sound, a repeating sound, or vibration.




TIP To change the alarm sound, select the alarm sound icon, select the **Play Sound** list, and then select the alarm sound you want to use.

- 9 Press **OK**  twice.
- 10 If prompted, select **Yes** to accept your changes.

Managing identity certificates

Your smartphone may include preinstalled certificates. Certificates are digital documents that are used to authenticate

and exchange information on networks. Certificates can be issued for a user, a device, or a service.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Certificates** .
- 3 Select any of the following tabs:
 - Personal:** Displays certificates that establish your identity when you log in to a secured network, such as a corporate network.
 - Intermediate:** Displays certificates issued by the root whose purpose is to then issue personal certificates.
 - Root:** Displays certificates that identify the computers, such as servers, to which you connect. These certificates help prevent unauthorized users from accessing your smartphone and information.
- 4 Press **OK** .




TIP To view detailed certificate information, highlight the certificate, press and hold **Center** on the 5-way, and then select **View**. To delete a certificate, highlight the certificate, press and hold **Center** on the 5-way, and then select **Delete**.

Enabling error reporting


Error Reporting sends info that helps diagnose application errors for devices running Windows Mobile® software. When an error is detected, a text file is created. You can review the file and choose whether you want it delivered to Microsoft technical support. The information is used by programming groups at Microsoft for quality control and is not used for tracking individual users or installations for any marketing purpose. The info that is collected is technical info about the state of your system when the error occurred. No documents (or any info contained in them) are intentionally sent with the report. To ensure further security, the report is transmitted via a secure connection and is kept confidential and anonymous in a limited-access database.

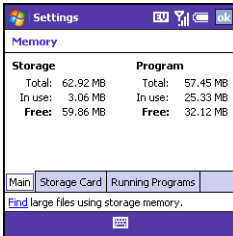
DID YOU KNOW? This error reporting method meets the privacy regulations of the European Union (EU) as well as the Fair Information Practice Principles of the Federal Trade Commission in the United States. To view the Fair Information Practice Principles, visit the Federal Trade Commission website at ftc.gov/reports/privacy3/fairinfo.htm.

Your smartphone must be connected to your computer when you send the error report—provided your computer is connected to the Internet.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Error Reporting** .
- 3 Select whether you want to enable or disable error reporting.
- 4 Press **OK** .

How much storage space do I have left?

- 1 Press and hold **OK** .
- 2 Select any of the following tabs:
 - Main:** Displays the amount of memory assigned to your applications and info, as well as the amount of memory in use versus the available memory.



Memory	
Storage	Program
Total: 62.92 MB	Total: 57.45 MB
In use: 3.06 MB	In use: 25.33 MB
Free: 59.86 MB	Free: 32.12 MB
Main	Storage Card
	Running Programs
Find large files using storage memory.	

TIP If storage memory is low, consider using an expansion card to store files (see [Using expansion cards](#)). If program memory is low, close some applications to avoid slow smartphone performance (see [Closing applications](#)).



Storage Card: Displays the amount of memory available on an expansion card that is inserted in the expansion slot on your smartphone.

Running Programs: Lists the applications that are in use on your smartphone. To switch to an application, highlight it and select **Activate**. To close an application, highlight it and select **Stop**. To close all open applications, select **Stop All**.



- 3 Press **OK** .

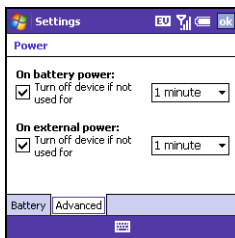
Optimizing power settings

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Power** .
- 3 On the Battery tab, view the power remaining in your battery.



TIP An easy way to check the battery level is by tapping the **Battery** icon in the title bar.

- 4 Select the **Advanced** tab and set whether your smartphone screen turns off automatically after a specified period of inactivity. You can assign different intervals for battery power and external power.



- 5 Press **OK** .

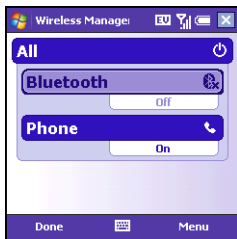
TIP To conserve additional battery power, adjust the display backlight setting. Press **Start** and select **Settings**. Select the **System** tab, and then select **Backlight**. On the Battery Power tab, set whether the display backlight turns off automatically after a period of inactivity. You can also select the External Power tab to turn off the backlight when your smartphone is connected to an external charging source.

TIP To change the settings for one of the displayed wireless features, press **Menu** (right softkey) and select the wireless feature you want to change.

- 3 Press **OK** .

Turning wireless services on/off

- 1 At the top of any screen, tap the **signal-strength**  icon and select **Wireless Manager**.



- 2 Select **Bluetooth** or **Phone** to turn that feature on or off. Select **All** to turn all wireless features on or off.

Connection settings



Managing ISP settings

Your smartphone is already set up to connect to the Internet using a high-speed data connection on the Verizon Wireless network. To connect to the Internet, simply start Internet Explorer Mobile.

For special situations, such as connecting to your internet service provider (ISP) or to a remote access server (RAS), you can set up another connection.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Obtain the following information from your ISP or system administrator:

- ISP server phone number or access point
- Username

- Password
- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
 - 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Connections** .
 - 3 On the Tasks tab, select **Manage existing connections**.
 - 4 Select the **Modem** tab.
 - 5 Highlight the connection you want to view or change, and then select **Edit**, or to create a new connection, select **New**.
 - 6 Follow the onscreen instructions to edit or create the connection.



Connecting to a VPN

If you want to use your smartphone to access your corporate email account or other files on your corporate server, you may need to set up a VPN (virtual private network). A VPN enables you to log in to your corporate server through the company's firewall (security layer).

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Check with your company's system administrator to see if a VPN is required to access the corporate network. If you need a VPN, you




must purchase and install a third-party VPN client to use this feature.

Ask your corporate system administrator for the following information:

- Your username and password
 - Your server's domain name
 - Your server's TCP/IP settings
 - Your server's host name or IP address
- 1 Install your third-party VPN client (see [Installing applications](#)).
 - 2 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
 - 3 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Connections** .
 - 4 On the Tasks tab, select **Add a new VPN server connection**.
 - 5 Follow the onscreen instructions to enter the settings provided by your corporate system administrator.

TIP To manually start a data connection on Verizon Wireless's network or another network, go to **Connections Settings**, and on the Tasks tab, select **Manage existing connections**. Highlight the connection you want to start, press and hold **Center** on the 5-way, and then select **Connect** from the shortcut menu.



Setting up a proxy server

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Connections** .
- 3 On the Tasks tab, select **Set up my proxy server**.
- 4 Check both boxes near the top of the screen.
- 5 Select **Proxy server** and enter the proxy server name.
- 6 Press **OK** .

TIP To change settings such as the port number, proxy server type, or credentials, select **Advanced**.



Ending a data connection

If your service plan includes minutes-of-use fees for data connections, you can reduce costs by ending the data connection when you've finished browsing the web.

- 1 Use the stylus to tap one of the data connection icons ( or ) on the title bar.
- 2 Select **Disconnect** from the shortcut menu.

Submitting usage information to Microsoft

You can choose to anonymously send information about your smartphone usage to Microsoft. This information helps the company improve its Windows Mobile software. No personal information is submitted, you do not incur data charges, and participation is voluntary.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Customer Feedback** .
- 3 Select **Send Feedback**.



CHAPTER

14

Troubleshooting

Although we can't anticipate all the questions you might have, this chapter provides answers to some of the most commonly asked questions. For additional information and answers to other common questions, visit palm.com/us/support/treo/treo700wxverizon/.

In this chapter

Transferring info from another device	273
Reinstalling the desktop software	273
Resetting your smartphone	274
Performance.	277
Screen	278
Network connection.	279
Synchronization: Overview.	282
Synchronization: Desktop sync software	283
Synchronization: Exchange ActiveSync (wireless synchronization)	288
Email	289
Web	292
Camera.	293
Third-party applications	294
Making room on your smartphone.	295
Voice quality	296

Transferring info from another device

For information on transferring your info from a previous Windows Mobile® device or from a Palm OS® by ACCESS device to your new Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone, visit palm.com/us/support/treo/treo700wxverizon/.

DID YOU KNOW? You can purchase a third-party application that lets you run Palm OS® applications on your smartphone.

DID YOU KNOW? If you have questions about Windows Mobile, you can go to windowsmobile.com. Search for Palm devices for information.

IMPORTANT Do not use a backup utility to transfer your info from another device to your new smartphone. This can cause your smartphone to malfunction.

Reinstalling the desktop software

If you have problems synchronizing using your desktop sync software, you may need to reinstall the software.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN Make sure your computer profile includes administrator rights to install software. In large organizations, these are usually granted by the system administrator.

- 1 Shut down your computer and turn it on again.
- 2 On your computer, click **Start > Control Panel > Add or Remove Programs**.
- 3 Remove your desktop software. For computers running Windows XP, the software is called Microsoft ActiveSync. For computers running Windows Vista, the software is called Windows Mobile Device Center.



- 4 Quit any active applications, including virus scanners and Internet security applications.
- 5 To reinstall the software, see [Installing ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP](#) or [Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista](#) for detailed instructions.

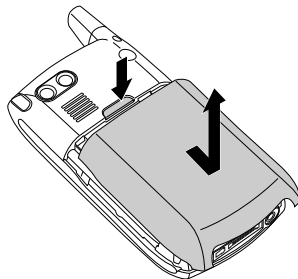
DID YOU KNOW? The Windows Mobile Getting Started CD installs the software and drivers that let you synchronize with Microsoft Office Outlook®. If you want to synchronize with a different personal information manager (PIM), you must install a third-party solution. Contact the PIM's vendor to learn if software is available for your smartphone.

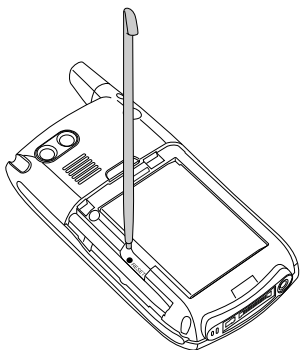
Resetting your smartphone

Performing a soft reset

Performing a soft reset is similar to restarting a computer. If your smartphone is not responding or you have trouble synchronizing with your computer, a soft reset may help.

- 1 Disconnect your smartphone from the AC charger if it is connected.
- 2 If your smartphone responds to key presses, press and hold **Power/End**  to turn off your phone.
- 3 If the screen display is on, press **Power/End**  to turn off the screen.
- 4 Use one hand to press the **battery door release** and use the other hand to slide the battery door downward to remove it from your smartphone.
- 5 Use the stylus tip to gently press the **reset** button on the back of your smartphone.
- 6 Wait for the progress bar on the Treo logo screen to fill before continuing to use your smartphone.





TIP You can also do a soft reset by removing the battery and reinserting it.

DID YOU KNOW? If the phone or the Bluetooth® wireless technology feature was on before a reset, these automatically turn on after the reset.

Performing a hard reset

A hard reset erases all personal information, such as appointments, contacts, and tasks, as well as programs you have added, such as third-party software on your smartphone. Never do a

hard reset without first trying a soft reset. You can restore previously synchronized information the next time you sync.




IMPORTANT Synchronize to restore your Outlook data, such as Outlook email, Calendar, Contacts, Notes, and Tasks. You can use a backup and restore solution. Make sure it's an application that's approved by Palm, such as the one included on the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD.

TIP Some third-party applications do not create a backup on your computer when you synchronize. If you do a hard reset, you may lose info in these applications and you need to reinstall the application on your smartphone after the hard reset. Please contact the application vendor to find out if your info is backed up during synchronization.

DID YOU KNOW? When you synchronize after a hard reset, the source folder in My Documents changes from Treo My Documents to WM_*your name*.

A hard reset can tell you whether a problem stems from your smartphone or from an application installed on it. If you do

not experience the problem after you perform a hard reset, the problem may be related to software you installed. See [Third-party applications](#) for suggestions on diagnosing third-party software issues.

- 1 Synchronize your smartphone with your computer so that your smartphone applications and info can be restored by synchronizing again after you perform the hard reset.
- 2 Use one hand to press the **battery door release** and use the other hand to slide the battery door downward to remove it from your smartphone.
- 3 If the screen is off, press **Power/End**  to wake up the screen.
- 4 While pressing and holding **Power/End** , use the tip of the stylus to gently press and hold the **reset** button on the back of your smartphone.
- 5 Continue pressing and holding both buttons until the “Erase all data?” prompt appears.
- 6 Press **Up**  to confirm the hard reset.
- 7 Wait for the progress bar on the Treo logo screen to fill before continuing to use your smartphone.


- 8 (Optional) Synchronize to restore your previously synchronized info. If you use a backup utility, you may also need to restore a backup to recover additional info and settings.

Replacing the battery

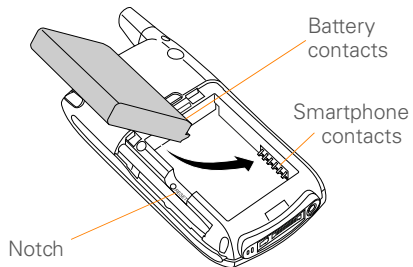
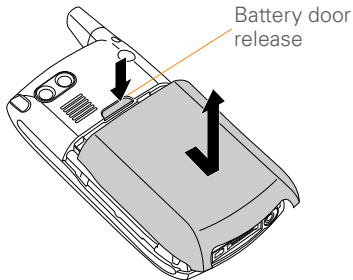
Your smartphone comes with a replaceable battery. Be sure to use a replacement battery from Palm that is compatible with Treo 700wx models. Do not use a battery from any earlier model of smartphone.

TIP Be sure to dispose of your old battery in an environmentally responsible and legal way. In some areas, disposal in household or business trash is prohibited. Visit palm.com/environment for more information.

DID YOU KNOW? Your smartphone stores all your info even when you remove the battery.

- 1 Press **Power/End**  to turn off the screen.
- 2 Use one hand to press the **battery door release** and use the other hand to slide the battery door downward to remove it from your smartphone.




- 3 Place a finger in the notch between the stylus and the battery, and lift the battery at a 45-degree angle.
- 4 Align the new battery contacts with the phone contacts inside the battery compartment.
- 5 Insert the new battery into the compartment at a 45-degree angle, pressing it into place. Slide the battery door onto the back of the smartphone until it clicks into place.






- 6 Wait for the screen to turn on.

Performance

The applications are running slower than usual

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Memory** .
- 3 Select the **Running Programs** tab.
- 4 Select **Stop All** to close all your open applications.
- 5 Press **OK** .

If the previous steps don't fix the problem, try doing a soft reset (see [Performing a soft reset](#)). If the problem persists, follow these steps to turn off the Voice Command setting, if it is enabled:

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the **Personal** tab, select **Voice Command** .
- 3 Uncheck the **Enabled** box.
- 4 Press **OK** .

TIP Be sure that third-party applications are designed for Windows Mobile 6 Professional. Applications written for Windows Mobile 6 Standard or earlier versions of Windows Mobile software do not work with your smartphone.

If you can try a free version of the software before purchasing it, you can test it first to make sure it works properly.

My battery seems to drain quickly

If you have a push email solution or if you have set up a schedule for wireless synchronization, check with your email provider or system administrator to make sure that the server is set up properly to work with your smartphone. Incorrect

server setup can cause excessive drain on your battery.

For more tips on conversing battery life, see [Maximizing battery life](#).

Screen




The screen appears blank

- 1 If you're on a call, when the time period specified in Backlight Settings expires, the screen dims; one minute later, the screen automatically turns off. Press any key except Power/End to wake up the screen. Pressing Power/End hangs up the call.
- 2 Look closely at the screen. If you can see a dim image, try adjusting the screen brightness (see [Adjusting the brightness](#)).
- 3 If that doesn't work, perform a soft reset (see [Performing a soft reset](#)).
- 4 If that doesn't work, connect your smartphone to the AC charger (see [Charging the battery](#)) and perform a soft reset again.

- 5 If that doesn't work, perform a hard reset (see [Performing a hard reset](#)).

TIP If you are using a third-party application, make sure that the application supports 240x240 screen resolution.

The screen doesn't respond accurately to taps or activates wrong features

- 1 Make sure there is no debris trapped under the edges of the screen.
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 3 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Screen** .
- 4 On the General tab, select **Align Screen**.
- 5 Tap the screen where indicated.
- 6 Press **OK** .

Network connection

Signal strength is weak

- 1 If you're standing, move about 10 feet (3 meters) in any direction.

- 2 If you're in a building, move near a window. Open any metal blinds.
- 3 If you're in a building, move outdoors or to a more open area.
- 4 If you're outdoors, move away from large buildings, trees, or electrical wires.
- 5 If you're in a vehicle, move your smartphone so that it's level with a window.

TIP Become familiar with low coverage areas where you live, commute, work, and play so you know when to expect signal-strength issues.

My smartphone won't connect to the mobile network

- 1 Try the suggestions above for weak signals.
- 2 Turn off your phone and turn it on again (see [Turning your smartphone on/off](#)).
- 3 Perform a soft reset (see [Performing a soft reset](#)).

My phone seems to turn off by itself

If a system error and reset occur, the phone automatically turns on if it was on

before the reset. However, if your smartphone can't determine if your phone was on before the reset, it does not automatically turn on the phone (see [Turning your phone on](#)).

I can't tell if data services are available

The following icons appear in the title bar to indicate whether data services are available:



You are in an area that supports NationalAccess (1xRTT) data services.



You are in an area that supports BroadbandAccess (EVDO) data services.



A NationalAccess data call is in progress. You can make calls, but you cannot receive calls; any incoming calls go to voicemail. When you make a call, the data transmission is automatically interrupted.



A BroadbandAccess data call is in progress. You can still make or receive calls. When you make or receive a call, the data transmission is automatically interrupted.



Your phone is connected to a NationalAccess network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls.




Your phone is connected to a BroadbandAccess network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls.




My smartphone won't connect to the Internet

Your smartphone supports NationalAccess (1xRTT) or BroadbandAccess (EVDO) wireless data networks. To connect to the Internet, you must subscribe to data services with Verizon Wireless.

- Contact Verizon Wireless to verify that your subscription plan includes data services and that these services have

been correctly activated. Verizon Wireless should also be able to tell you if there are any outages in your location.

- Press and hold **Power/End**  to turn off your phone, then press and hold the same button to turn it back on.
- Perform a soft reset (see [Performing a soft reset](#)).
- Confirm that data services are correctly configured on your smartphone by doing the following:

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Connections** .
- 3 On the Tasks tab, select **Manage existing connections**.
- 4 If Verizon Wireless, National Access, or Broadband Access appears in the list, press **OK** . If not, contact Verizon Wireless for assistance.

I can't send or receive text or multimedia messages

- Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).

- Contact Verizon Wireless to verify that your plan includes messaging services, that these services have been correctly activated, and that they are available at your location. Verizon Wireless should be able to tell you if messaging services have been experiencing transmission delays.
- If possible, contact the recipient or sender of the message, and make sure the receiving device can handle the type of message you're sending.
- If a text message arrives but does not display a notification, perform a soft reset (see [Performing a soft reset](#)).

I can't make or receive calls using a hands-free device with Bluetooth® wireless technology



Verify all of the following:


- The **Turn on Bluetooth** box is checked in Bluetooth Settings (see [Entering basic Bluetooth settings](#)).
- Your Bluetooth device is charged and turned on.
- Your smartphone is within range of the hands-free device. Bluetooth range is

up to 30 feet (10 meters) in optimum environmental conditions, which include the absence of the following: obstacles, radio interference from nearby electronic equipment, and other factors.

- The Bluetooth Settings screen is closed.
- You are away from other devices using the 2.4 GHz radio frequency, such as cordless phones, microwaves, and Wi-Fi equipment. If this is impossible, move the phone closer to the hands-free device.
- The device specifications are compatible with your smartphone.

I lost the connection between my smartphone and my Bluetooth headset




- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Bluetooth** .
- 3 Select the **Devices** tab.
- 4 Select your headset name from the list.
- 5 In **Partnership Settings**, make sure the **Hands Free** option box is checked.
- 6 Select **Save**.
- 7 Highlight the headset name.

8 Press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and then select **Set as Hands-Free**.

9 Test your headset by making or receiving a call.

If the headset still doesn't work, delete the existing partnership and create a new one.

To delete the partnership:

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Bluetooth** .
- 3 Highlight the headset device name.
- 4 Press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and then select **Delete**.
- 5 Create a new partnership (see [Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology](#)).

Synchronization: Overview

Synchronization enables you to back up the information on your smartphone onto your computer or your server. If you ever need

to perform a hard reset or otherwise erase all your information on your smartphone, you can synchronize your smartphone with your computer to restore the info. To make sure you always have an up-to-date backup of your info, synchronize frequently.

You can synchronize email and other information directly with Microsoft Exchange Server 2007, or Exchange Server 2003 with Service Pack 2, using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync®, or you can synchronize your smartphone with your computer, using desktop sync software.

DID YOU KNOW? You can go to the Windows Mobile website for more information at windowsmobile.com.

DID YOU KNOW? A common cause of sync problems is the presence of protective software, such as VPNs or firewalls, on your computer or network.

Synchronization: Desktop sync software




This section covers issues with synchronizing using the desktop sync software that came with your smartphone. If you have a Windows XP computer, the desktop sync software is called ActiveSync® desktop software. If you have a Windows Vista computer, the desktop sync software is called Windows Mobile Device Center.

NOTE See [Synchronization: Exchange ActiveSync \(wireless synchronization\)](#) for help with direct wireless synchronization with an Exchange server.

The desktop sync software does not respond to sync attempt




As you complete the following steps, synchronize after each step. If the

synchronization is successful, you do not need to complete the remaining steps.

- 1 Verify that the USB sync cable is securely connected at all points (see [Setting up your computer for synchronization](#)).
- 2 Make sure that all of the files you're trying to sync are closed on both your computer and your smartphone.
- 3 On a Windows XP computer, look for the ActiveSync  icon at the top of your smartphone screen and the ActiveSync  icon in the taskbar on your computer to make sure ActiveSync desktop software is running on your computer. On a Windows Vista computer, look for the **connection**  icon at the top of your smartphone screen.

If the correct icons are not displayed, do the following:

Smartphone:

- Press **Start** , select **Programs**, and select **ActiveSync** .
- Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Connections**.

- Make sure the **Synchronize all PCs using this connection** box is checked, and that **USB** is selected from the list.

Windows XP computer:


- Click **Start**.
- Navigate to **Programs**, and then select **Microsoft ActiveSync**.

Windows Vista computer:

- Click **Start**.
- Select **All Programs**, and then select **Windows Mobile Device Center**.


- 4 Do one of the following:

Windows XP computer:

- Double-click the **ActiveSync**  icon in your taskbar.
- From the **File** menu, select **Connection Settings**.
- Make sure the **Allow USB connections** box is checked, and then click **Connect**.

Windows Vista computer:

- Click **Start**, select **All Programs**, and then select **Windows Mobile Device Center**.

- Select **Connect without setting up your device**, and then select **Connection settings**.
 - Make sure the **Allow USB connections** box is checked, and click **Connect**.
- 5 Perform a soft reset (see [Performing a soft reset](#)).
 - 6 Restart your computer and make sure the desktop sync software is running.
 - 7 If problems persist and you're synchronizing through a USB hub, try connecting the sync cable to a different USB port or directly to your computer's built-in USB port.
 - 8 If you're already synchronizing through a built-in USB port on the front of your computer, move the sync cable to a USB port on the back of your computer if your computer has one.
 - 9 Uninstall the desktop software that came with your smartphone, and then repeat the installation process (see [Reinstalling the desktop software](#)).
 - 10 For a Windows XP computer only, delete the existing partnership between your smartphone and your computer and create a new one by doing the following steps in turn:
 - Disconnect your smartphone and your computer from the sync cable.
 - Double-click the gray **ActiveSync**  icon in the taskbar in the lower-right corner of your computer screen.
 - Click **File**, and then click **Delete Mobile Device**. When asked to confirm, click **Yes**.
 - Connect your smartphone and your computer to the sync cable.
 - When the Synchronization Setup Wizard appears, follow the steps to establish a sync relationship between your smartphone and your computer.
 - 11 If your organization uses a firewall or a VPN connection, synchronizing with ActiveSync may not work. For a Windows XP computer only, go to microsoft.com and search for the following topics to help with specific firewall setup situations:
 - ActiveSync USB Connection Troubleshooting Guide
 - ActiveSync with Sygate Personal Firewall

- ActiveSync with TrendMicro PC-cillin Internet Security
- ActiveSync with Norton Personal Firewall
- ActiveSync with Zone Alarm Security Suite
- ActiveSync with McAfee Personal Firewall
- ActiveSync with Windows Firewall

12 Verify with your computer hardware vendor that your operating system supports your internal USB controller.

Synchronization finishes but info doesn't appear where it should

- With the included desktop sync software, your smartphone can synchronize with the root folders of Microsoft Office Outlook Contacts, Calendar, Tasks, and Notes (Outlook sold separately; a free trial version is available for download from the Windows Mobile Getting Started CD). If you want to synchronize with a global Exchange Address Book, you must copy the addresses to your local Contacts list in Microsoft Office Outlook (right-click

the addresses and select **Add to Personal Address Book**).

- Microsoft Office Outlook subfolders and public folders are not accessible with the included software. You may want to use a third-party solution instead.
- If you're trying to sync offline, be sure to set your Microsoft Office Outlook Calendar, Contacts, Notes, and Tasks to be available offline.
- If you're still having problems, try the following:
 - 1** Make sure you're synchronizing with the intended desktop personal information manager (PIM). The Windows Mobile Getting Started CD lets you synchronize with Microsoft Office Outlook for Windows. If you use a different PIM, you need to install third-party software to synchronize. For more information, consult the company that makes the PIM.
 - 2** Open the desktop sync software on your computer, and make sure the Files synchronization option is selected (see [Changing which applications sync](#)).

- 3 Uninstall the desktop sync software, reboot your computer, and then repeat the installation process (see [Reinstalling the desktop software](#)).

Synchronization starts but doesn't finish

Make sure that you installed the desktop software that came with your smartphone. If you're not sure whether this software is installed, reinstall it (see [Reinstalling the desktop software](#)).

My video and music files won't sync

- 1 Make sure you have Windows Media Player 10 or later installed on your computer.
- 2 Reinstall the desktop sync software (see [Reinstalling the desktop software](#)). Media file synchronization fails if you installed the desktop sync software before you installed Windows Media Player.

My appointments show up in the wrong time slot after I sync





- 1 Make sure that you installed the desktop sync software that came with your smartphone. If you're not sure

whether this software is installed, reinstall it (see [Reinstalling the desktop software](#)).

- 2 Open Microsoft Office Outlook and correct the wrong entries.
- 3 Manually enter any information you added to your smartphone since the last time you synchronized.
- 4 Synchronize your phone and your computer.

My scheduled sync doesn't work

By default, a scheduled sync does not work while you are roaming. This is to prevent roaming charges on your account. If roaming charges are not a concern, follow these steps to continue your sync schedule while roaming:

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **ActiveSync** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Schedule**.
- 4 Check the **Use above setting when roaming** box.
- 5 Press **OK** .

An alert tells me that ActiveSync encountered a problem on the server

There is a temporary problem with the server or the server may be temporarily overloaded. Try again later, and if the problem persists, contact your system administrator.

An alert tells me that there is not enough free memory to sync my info

The ActiveSync application on your smartphone ran out of storage space. Try the following:

- 1 Go to Memory Settings and close all running programs (see [Closing applications](#)).
- 2 If the problem persists, see [Making room on your smartphone](#) for suggestions on other ways to free up space on your smartphone.

An alert tells me that ActiveSync encountered a problem with [item type] [item name]

An error occurred during the sync of a single item. This error can usually be corrected only by removing the item that

caused the error. If you sync again to see if the error persists, be aware that items causing this type of error are skipped and do not show up again.

My Today screen settings are not restored after a hard reset

Settings such as the background image and plug-in choices are not backed up during synchronization, so they can't be restored after a hard reset. If you use a backup utility, you may be able to restore a backup to recover your Today screen setting and other additional info.

Synchronization: Exchange ActiveSync (wireless synchronization)

This section covers issues with direct wireless synchronization with an Exchange server. See [Synchronization: Desktop sync software](#) for help with synchronizing using your desktop sync software.

TIP If you are synchronizing with an Exchange server and you're unable to change your lock settings, check with your system administrator to find out if a systemwide locking policy is in place.

An alert tells me that the server could not be reached

Your smartphone had to wait too long to connect to the Exchange server. The connection may have been lost, the server may be temporarily overloaded, or the server may have encountered an internal error. Check your Exchange server name and proxy server settings (see [Setting up wireless synchronization](#)), and try again later.

An alert tells me that my account information could not be detected

When you set up the Exchange server sync options, the credentials page was left blank. Correct the credentials (see [Setting up wireless synchronization](#)), or set up your smartphone to sync only with a computer, and try to sync again.

An alert tells me the device timed out while waiting for credentials

The Exchange server credentials screen was left open too long. Reenter the Exchange server credentials, and try to sync again.

Email

I have problems using my account

Occasionally you may experience problems using an email account after you set it up. If you followed the account setup procedure (see [Setting up email](#)) and are experiencing problems in using the account, verify that the account complies with your email provider's requirements by following these steps:

- Verify both your password and your username for your email account.
- Some email service providers require you to be on their network to use your email account. If this is the case, be sure to use your provider's network as the connection type for the account.




- Some email service providers have other requirements specific to their service. For example, Yahoo! requires you to set up POP mail forwarding for your Yahoo! account to download email messages to your smartphone. Check with your service provider to see if any provider-specific requirements exist.
- Service provider settings frequently change. If your email account was working but you are currently experiencing problems, check with your service provider to see if any of the account settings have changed.

I have problems sending and receiving email

Short periods of time when email is unavailable are common due to server problems or poor wireless coverage. If you have problems sending or receiving mail for an extended period of time, check with your ISP or email service provider to verify that the service is working properly.

Scheduled email synchronization is not working

If email synchronization is occurring and you turn your smartphone off or the connection to your email service provider is disconnected, the synchronization fails.




- Check the synchronization schedule to make sure that email sync is set to occur at the expected day and time. See [Setting the synchronization schedule](#) for details.
- Press **Start** , select **Programs**, and then select **ActiveSync** .
- Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Configure Server**.
- Make sure the Save password box is checked. This is required for over-the-air synchronization.

I have problems sending email

If you are able to receive email messages but cannot send them, try the following steps, in turn:

- Make sure your ISP or email provider allows you to access email on a smartphone. Some providers do not offer this option at all; other providers

require an upgrade for accessing email on a smartphone.

- Press **Start** , select **Programs**, and then select **ActiveSync** . Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Configure Server**. Make sure the **This server requires an encrypted (SSL) connection** box is checked.
- Enter the name of a different outgoing mail server for sending mail. Many ISPs, such as cable companies, require that you have an Internet connection to their network to send email through their servers. In this case, you can almost always receive email from these accounts, but if you want to send email, you must send it through another server (see [Setting up a POP/IMAP account in the Messaging application: Other email providers](#)).

My vCard or vCal email attachment isn't forwarding correctly

Microsoft Office Outlook provides several features including vCard and vCal that work with email client software on a Windows computer. For these features to work correctly, the email client software must be




properly set up. Follow these steps to check the settings:

- 1 On your computer, click **Start** and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select **Control Panel**.
- 3 Select **Internet Options**, and then click the **Programs** tab.
- 4 Make sure that the email field is set to the correct email client software.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Start the email client software and make sure it is configured as the default MAPI client. Consult the documentation for your desktop email application for more information.

When I sync with my Exchange server my info is not downloading to my smartphone

Check with your system administrator to obtain the name of the mail server that offers you wireless access to the corporate mail system. If you cannot obtain the name of this server (some companies do not give it out, because they do not want wireless access to their servers), you cannot use Exchange ActiveSync to synchronize with



the Exchange server. You can also check the following setting:

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **ActiveSync** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Configure Server**.
- 4 Make sure the **This server requires an encrypted (SSL) connection** box is checked.

Web

I can't access a web page

First, make sure you have Internet access:

- 1 Open Internet Explorer Mobile and try to view a web page you've loaded before. To ensure that you're viewing the page directly from the Internet, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Refresh**.
- 2 After confirming your Internet connection, try to view the page in question again. If it comes up blank, press **Menu**  (right softkey) and select **Refresh**.

If you're still having trouble, the page may contain elements that are not supported by Internet Explorer Mobile, such as Flash, Shockwave, VBScript, WML script, and other plug-ins.

Some websites use a redirector to their true home page. For example, if you enter the address palm.com/support, it may resolve to palm.com/intl/support/select.epl. If Internet Explorer Mobile can't follow the redirect, try using a desktop browser to see the landing page of the redirector, and enter that address in Internet Explorer Mobile.

TIP Your smartphone can open your email application when you select an email address on a web page. If nothing happens when you select the link, try setting up your email application first (see [Setting up email](#)).

An image or map is too small on my smartphone screen

Internet Explorer Mobile has several viewing modes: One Column, Default, Desktop, and Full Screen. Switch to Desktop to see the full-size image (see [Viewing a web page](#)).

A secure site refuses to permit a transaction

Some websites don't support certain browsers for transactions. Please contact the site's webmaster to make sure the site allows transactions using Internet Explorer Mobile.

Camera

DID YOU KNOW? Pictures are 16-bit color. Resolution settings range from the low end of VGA (160 x 120 pixels) to a high end of 1.3 megapixels (1280 x 1024). Video resolution settings range from a low end of 176 x 144 pixels to a high end of 352 x 288 pixels. You can change the resolution setting by pressing **Menu** (right softkey) and selecting **Resolution** (still images) or **Quality** (video).

Here are some tips for taking good pictures with the built-in camera:

- Clean the camera's lens with a soft, lint-free cloth.
- Take pictures in bright lighting conditions. Low-light images may be

grainy, due to the sensitivity of the camera.

- Hold the camera as still as possible. Try supporting your picture-taking arm against your body or a stationary object (such as a wall).
- Keep the subject of the pictures still. Exposure time is longer with lower light levels, so you may see a blur.
- For best results, verify that you have the brightest light source coming from behind you, lighting the subject's face. Avoid taking indoor pictures with the subject in front of a window or light.
- Make sure the subject is at least 18 inches (0.5 meters) away from the camera to ensure good focus.

Remember that when you synchronize with a Windows computer, your Camera images are stored in the C:\Documents and Settings\\My Documents\Treo My Documents folder on your hard drive (see [Camera](#)).

The Camera preview image looks strange

Some third-party applications overwrite the color settings on your smartphone with

their own 8-bit color settings. This can affect the Camera Preview Mode. Delete third-party applications one by one until the preview image improves (see [Removing applications](#)).

Third-party applications

Sometimes third-party applications can cause conflicts on your smartphone. Third-party applications that modify wireless features may affect the performance of your smartphone and may require extra troubleshooting. Use caution when installing the following types of applications:

- Ringtone managers
- Caller ID applications
- Instant messaging
- Applications that modify when your phone or data connections turn on or off and how your phone behaves

If you recently installed an application and your smartphone seems to be stuck, try the following:

- 1 Perform a soft reset (see [Performing a soft reset](#)).
- 2 Make sure the third-party application is compatible with the Windows Mobile 6 Professional operating system on your smartphone.
- 3 Delete the most recently installed application from your smartphone (see [Removing applications](#)).
- 4 If the problem persists, perform another soft reset.
- 5 If possible, synchronize or use a backup utility to back up your most recent info.
- 6 Perform a hard reset (see [Performing a hard reset](#)).
- 7 Synchronize or restore your backup to restore the info in your built-in applications.
- 8 If the problem is resolved, begin reinstalling your third-party applications one at a time.

- 9 If the problem recurs, delete the last application you installed and report the problem to its developer.

Getting more help

Contact the vendor of any third-party software if you require further assistance.

TIP Remember that not all third-party applications were written with the Treo 700wx smartphone keyboard and 5-way navigator in mind. You may encounter strange behavior or errors in these applications if you use the keyboard and the 5-way navigator.

Making room on your smartphone

If you store a large amount of information, or install many third-party applications, the internal memory on your smartphone may fill up. Here are some common ways to clear space on your smartphone:

- **Camera:** Large images or videos take up a lot of memory. Move images to an expansion card (sold separately) or

delete images from your smartphone (see [Pictures & Videos](#)).

- **Messaging:** Multimedia content and email attachments can consume excessive memory. Move multimedia content and attachments to an expansion card, or delete large files from your smartphone (see [Deleting messages](#) and [Deleting a single message](#)). You may also want to empty the deleted items folder.
- **Internet:** If you save links to pages you've visited in Internet Explorer Mobile, you may want to clear all recent pages (see [Customizing your Internet Explorer Mobile settings](#)).
- **Third-party applications:** You can delete infrequently used applications or move them to an expansion card (see [Moving info between your smartphone and an expansion card using File Explorer](#)).

Also, remember that your smartphone includes an expansion card slot, and that you can store applications and information on expansion cards. However, you still need free memory on the

smartphone itself to run applications from an expansion card.

Voice quality

Is the other person hearing an echo?

- Try decreasing the volume on your smartphone to avoid coupling or feedback on the other person's end. This applies to both the speakerphone and to the handset earpiece.
- Position the smartphone closer to your ear to prevent sound leaking back to the microphone. Keep your hand away from the microphone hole, which is on the lower-right side of your smartphone.

- If you're using Speakerphone mode with your smartphone lying on a flat surface, try turning the smartphone "face down" (screen facing the surface).

Are you hearing your own voice echo?

Ask the other person to turn down their volume or to hold the phone closer to their ear.

Is your voice too quiet on the other end?

Be sure to hold the bottom of the smartphone, or the hands-free microphone, close to your mouth.

Check the signal-strength indicator. If the signal is weak, try to find an area with better coverage.

Terms

1xRTT (Single carrier [1x] radio transmission technology)

A wireless technology that can provide fast data transfer and Internet access with average speeds of 60–80Kbps and bursts of up to 144Kbps. Also called NationalAccess.

A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile)

A technology that defines how high-quality audio (stereo or mono) is streamed from one device to another over a Bluetooth® wireless technology connection, such as music streamed from a mobile phone to a wireless headset.

ActiveSync®

The software on your Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone that exchanges and updates the information on your smartphone with the information on your computer.

ActiveSync desktop software

The software on your Windows XP computer that exchanges and updates the

information on your computer with the information on your smartphone. To open ActiveSync on your computer, double-click the ActiveSync icon in the taskbar in the lower-right corner of your screen. If the icon does not appear, click **Start**, click **All Programs** (or navigate to the **Programs** group), and then select **Microsoft ActiveSync**. See [Installing ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP](#).

auto-off interval

The time of inactivity that passes before the screen on your smartphone turns off. The wireless features on your smartphone are unaffected by this setting. See [Optimizing power settings](#).

beam

The process of sending or receiving an entry or application using the infrared port on your smartphone or using Bluetooth® wireless technology. See [Beaming information](#).

Bluetooth® wireless technology

Technology that enables devices such as smartphones, mobile phones, and computers to connect wirelessly to each other so that they can exchange

information over short distances. For more info, visit bluetooth.com. See [Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology](#).

BroadbandAccess

A wireless broadband technology that is designed for very high speed data transfer, with average download speeds of 400 to 600Kbps, and is capable of reaching speeds up to 1.8Mbps and upload speeds up to 156Kbps. Also called EVDO.

desktop software

A Personal Information Manager (PIM) application for computers, such as Microsoft Outlook®, that helps you manage your personal information and keep it synchronized with your smartphone. See [Installing ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP](#) or [Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista](#).

dialog box

A set of options and command buttons that is enclosed by a border and that enables you to carry out a specific task.

EVDO (Evolution Data Optimized)

A wireless broadband-like technology that is designed for very high speed data transfer, with average download speeds of 400 to 600Kbps. Verizon Wireless refers to this service as BroadbandAccess.

infrared (IR)

A way of transmitting information using light waves. You use the IR port on your smartphone to transfer information between other IR devices within a short radius. See [Beaming information](#).

lithium-ion (li-ion)

The rechargeable battery technology used in your smartphone. See [Charging the battery](#).

Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync®

Technology that allows your smartphone to synchronize email, contacts, calendar events, and tasks wirelessly with Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 or 2007. See [Setting up wireless synchronization](#).

MMS (Multimedia Messaging System)

An enhanced messaging system that enables you to send pictures, animations, and ringtones almost instantly. See

Creating and sending a multimedia message.

Mobile Device

The component on your Windows XP computer that enables you to install applications and other information on your smartphone. To access it, open Windows Explorer or My Computer and look for the icon that represents your smartphone. See Installing applications from your computer.

NationalAccess

A wireless technology that can provide fast data transfer and Internet access with average speeds of 60–80Kbps and bursts of up to 144Kbps. Also called 1xRTT.

partnership

The connection that you make between two devices by means of Bluetooth wireless technology. The devices recognize each other because each device finds the same passkey on the other device. After you create a partnership between the devices, you no longer need to enter the passkey. Partnership is also known as *paired relationship*, *pairing*, *trusted device*, and *trusted pair* on some devices. See

Connecting to devices with Bluetooth@ wireless technology.

Phone Off

Appearing on the Today screen, this indicates that your smartphone is not connected to any network, and you cannot make calls except those to emergency numbers. You can still use the organizer features, however. See Turning your phone on.

piconet

An ad-hoc network of devices that uses Bluetooth wireless technology to connect one master device with up to seven active slave devices. The network can include up to 255 inactive, or parked, slave devices, which the master device can bring into active status at any time.

PIM (personal information manager)

A genre of software that includes applications such as Microsoft Outlook, Palm® Desktop software, Lotus Notes, and ACT!. PIMs generally store contacts, schedules, tasks, and memos.

PIN (personal identification number)

A password you can use to secure your smartphone.

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)

A security protocol that enables you to send personal information in a more secure manner over the Internet.

SMS (Short Messaging Service)

The service that exchanges short text messages almost instantly between mobile devices. Your smartphone can send and receive text messages while you are on a call. See [Creating and sending a text message](#).

streaming

Technology that enables you to access media content—for example, watch video or listen to an audio program—directly from the Internet on your smartphone without needing to download and save a file on your smartphone. See [Viewing a video](#).

synchronization

The process in which information that is entered or updated on your smartphone, your computer, or a server is automatically

updated in one of the other locations either wirelessly or by means of a cable connection. See [Synchronizing information](#).

username

The name associated with your smartphone that distinguishes it from other Windows Mobile® devices. If you install the desktop software, you are asked to give your smartphone a username. If you only synchronize wirelessly using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, you do not need to give your smartphone a username. See [Installing ActiveSync desktop software: Windows XP](#) or [Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista](#).

Windows Mobile

The operating system of your Treo 700wx smartphone. Your smartphone uses Windows Mobile® 6 Professional edition. When installing third-party applications to your smartphone, be sure to install only apps that are written for Microsoft Windows Mobile 6 Professional. Apps designed for Microsoft Windows Mobile 6 Standard or any edition of Windows Mobile 5.0 software are not compatible with your

Treo 700wx smartphone. See [Installing third-party applications](#).

Windows Mobile Device Center

The software on your Windows Vista computer that enables you to synchronize content and manage music, pictures, and videos between your smartphone and your computer. To open Windows Mobile Device Center on your computer, click **Start**, click **All Programs**, and select **Windows Mobile Device Center**. See [Installing Windows Mobile Device Center: Windows Vista](#).

Important safety and legal information

FCC Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B computer peripheral, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

RF Safety Exposure

Radio Frequency Energy (SAR): Radio transmitting devices radiate Radio Frequency (RF) energy during their operation. RF energy can be absorbed into the human body and potentially can cause adverse health effects if excessive levels are absorbed. The unit of measurement for human exposure to RF energy is “Specific Absorption Rate” (SAR).

The Federal Communications Commission (FCC), Industrie Canada (IC), and other agencies around the world have established limits that incorporate a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons using this equipment.

In order to certify this unit for sale in the US, Canada and Europe this unit has been tested for RF exposure compliance at a qualified test laboratory and found to comply with the regulations regarding exposure to RF Energy.

SAR was measured with the unit transmitting at its maximum certified RF power. Often, however, during normal operation the unit will transmit much less than maximum power. Transmit power is controlled automatically and, in general is reduced as you get closer to a cellular base station. This reduction in transmit power will result in a lower RF energy exposure and resulting SAR value.

FCC RF Safety Statement

In order to comply with FCC RF exposure safety guidelines, users MUST use one of the following types of bodyworn accessories:

- A Palm® brand body-worn accessory that has been tested for SAR compliance and is intended for use with this product.
- An accessory that contains NO metal (snaps, clips, etc) and provides AT LEAST 1.5 cm of separation between the users body and the unit.

Do NOT use the device in a manner such that it is in direct contact with the body (i.e. on the lap or in a breast pocket). Such use will likely exceed FCC RF safety exposure limits. See fcc.gov/oet/rtfsafety/ for more information on RF exposure safety.

The Palm® Treo™ 700wx smartphone may be used with a Wi-Fi® SDIO card; however, the user must ensure that the SDIO Wi-Fi card has been approved by the FCC for use with the Treo 700wx smartphone. For a list of SDIO Wi-Fi cards approved by the FCC for use with the Treo 700wx smartphone, please go to palm.com/us/support/treo/treo700wxverizon/.

If using a SDIO Wi-Fi card not approved for use with the Treo 700wx smartphone by the FCC, the user must turn off the phone (CDMA radio) on the Treo 700wx smartphone.

Use of an SDIO wireless transmitter that is not approved in conjunction with the phone (CDMA radio) is not authorized by the FCC and may exceed FCC RF exposure guidelines.

Responsible party

(North America)
Palm, Inc.
950 W. Maude Ave.
Sunnyvale, CA 94085
USA
palm.com

(Europe)
Roy Bedlow
Buckhurst Court
London Road
Wokingham, Berkshire RG40 1PA,
UK

Declaration of Conformity

We, Palm, Inc., declare under sole responsibility that the product:

Model name: Treo 700wx

Description: PDA phone

Palm declares that the above model of Treo 700wx smartphone is compliant with the regulations below. The declaration applies to the smartphone and its associated accessories (power supply, headset, and USB cable) where applicable.

Maximum Scaled SAR Values (W/kg)		
Band	CDMA Cellular	CDMA PCS
Head SAR (Held to Ear)	(W/Kg) 1.26	(W/Kg) 1.26
Body SAR (Worn)	(W/Kg) 1.01	(W/Kg) .55

For SAR values when used with a SDIO Wi-Fi card go to:
palm.com/us/support/treo/treo700wxverizon/

FCC OET Bulletin 65 Supplement C

FCC ID: O8FJIMI

IC ID: 3905A-JIMI



Is in conformity with the following standards and/or other normative document:

- ETSI EN 301 511
- ETSI EN 301 908-1
- ETSI EN 301 908-2
- ETSI EN 300 328
- ETSI EN 301 489-1/-7/-17/-24
- EN60950-1
- EN 50360

We hereby declare that the above named product is in conformance to all essential requirements of the RTTE Directive 1999/5/EC.

The conformity assessment procedure referred to Article 10 and detailed in Annex IV of directive 1999/5/EC has been related to Articles:

- R&TTE Article 3.1 (a) Health and Safety
- R&TTE Article 3.1 (b) EMC
- R&TTE Article 3.2 Spectrum Usage

Identification mark 0984 (notified body) CE.

This identification mark is permanently provided on the device label.

The technical documentation relevant to the above equipment will be held at:

Palm, Inc.
950 W Maude Avenue
Sunnyvale, CA. 94085
U.S.A.

Person responsible for making this declaration:



David Woo/Sr Compliance Engineer
Sunnyvale/August 31, 2006

Antenna Care/Unauthorized Modifications

Use only the supplied integral antenna. Unauthorized antenna modifications or attachments could damage the unit and may violate FCC regulations. Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Potentially Unsafe Areas

Potentially explosive atmospheres: Turn off your smartphone when you are in any areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere, such as fueling areas (gas or petrol stations) or storage facilities for fuel or chemicals.

Declaration of Conformity

Treo 700wx

Palm declares that the above model of Treo 700wx smartphone is compliant with the regulations below. The declaration applies to the smartphone and its associated accessories (power supply, headset, and USB cable) where applicable.

Maximum Scaled SAR Values (W/kg) FCC				
Band	GSM 850	GSM 1900	WCDMA 850	WCDMA 1900
Head SAR (Held to Ear)	(W/Kg) 0.866	(W/Kg) 0.588	(W/Kg) 0.569	(W/Kg) 1.16
Body SAR (Worn)	(W/Kg) 0.532	(W/Kg) 0.155	(W/Kg) 0.231	(W/Kg) 0.164

Maximum SAR Values (W/kg) CE			
Band	GSM 900	PCS 1800	WCDMA 2100
Head SAR	0.741	0.244	0.447

Bluetooth® Qualification Program

Information about this listing can be found at:
<https://programs.bluetooth.org/tpg/listings.cfm>.

Bluetooth® QD ID B012406

Using TTY

A TTY (also known as TDD or text telephone) is a telecommunications device that allows people who are deaf or hard of hearing, or who have speech or language disabilities, to communicate by telephone.

Your Palm Treo 700wx smartphone is compatible with select TTY devices. You can connect a TTY/TDD machine to your smartphone through the headset jack, but you cannot use your headset jack with a headset or hands-free kit while this mode is enabled. Please check with the manufacturer of your TTY device for connectivity information and to ensure that the TTY device supports digital wireless transmission.

To use TTY, you may need to make additional arrangements with Verizon Wireless. Please contact Verizon Wireless's customer service department for more information.

- 1 Press Start and select Settings.
- 2 Select Personal, and then select Phone.
- 3 Select Phone.
- 4 Select the TTY/TDD list, and then select either On or Off.
- 5 Press OK. A keyboard icon appears at the top of your Today screen whenever TTY is enabled.

To disable TTY, repeat the steps above.

Operational Warnings

IMPORTANT INFORMATION ON SAFE AND EFFICIENT OPERATION. Read this information before using your integrated multi-service portable radio.

For the safe and efficient operation of your radio, observe these guidelines:

Potentially Unsafe Areas/Potentially explosive

atmospheres Obey all signs and instructions regarding turning off your smartphone. In particular, turn off your smartphone when you are in any areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere, such as fueling areas (gas or petrol stations, below deck on boats), storage facilities for fuel or chemicals, blasting areas and areas near electrical blasting caps, and areas where there are chemicals or particles (such as metal powders, grains, and dust) in the air.

Interference to Medical and Personal Electronic Devices Most but not all electronic equipment is shielded from RF signals and certain electronic equipment may not be shielded against the RF signals from your smartphone.

Pacemakers The Health Industry Manufacturers Association recommends that a minimum separation of six inches (6") be maintained between a smartphone and a pacemaker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. These recommendations are consistent with the independent research by the recommendations of Wireless Technology Research.

Persons with pacemakers should:

- ALWAYS keep the smartphone more than six inches from their pacemaker when the smartphone is turned ON.
- Not carry the smartphone in a breast pocket.
- Use the ear opposite the pacemaker to minimize the potential for interference.
- Turn the smartphone OFF immediately if you have any reason to suspect that interference is taking place.

Audio Safety Some hearing aids may be affected by some digital smartphone models. You may want to consult your doctor in the event of you experience interference with your hearing aid while using your smartphone. When using the speakerphone feature, it is

recommended that you place your smartphone at a safe distance from your ear.

Other Medical Devices If you use any other personal medical device, consult the manufacturer of your device to determine if it is adequately shielded from external RF energy. Your physician may be able to assist you in obtaining this information.

Turn your smartphone OFF in health care facilities when any regulations posted in these areas instruct you to do so. Hospitals or health care facilities may be using equipment that could be sensitive to external RF energy.

Interference to Other Electronic Devices RF energy may affect improperly installed or inadequately shielded electronic operating and entertainment systems in motor vehicles. Check with the manufacturer or representative to determine if these systems are adequately shielded from external RF energy. Also check with the manufacturer of any equipment that has been added to the vehicle.

Repetitive Motion Injuries When using the keyboard or playing games on your smartphone, you may experience discomfort in your neck, shoulders, hands, arms, of other parts of the body. To avoid any injury, such as tendonitis, carpal tunnel syndrome, or other musculoskeletal disorder, make sure to take necessary breaks from use, take longer rests (such as several hours) if discomfort or tiring begins, and see a doctor if discomfort persists.

Blackouts and Seizures Blinking lights, such as those experienced with television or playing video games, may cause some people to experience blackout or seizure, even if never experienced before. In the event a smartphone user should experience any disorientation, loss of awareness, convulsion, eye or muscle twitching or other involuntary movements, stop use immediately and consult a doctor. Individuals with personal or family history of such events should consult a doctor before using the device. To limit the possibility of such symptoms, wherever possible every hour take a minimum of 15 minutes, use in a well lighted area, view the screen from the farthest distance and avoid exposure to blinking lights if you are tired.

Aircraft While in aircraft, follow all instructions regarding the operation of your smartphone. Use of your smartphone while on board on aircraft must be done in accordance in compliance with airline instructions and regulations.

Vehicles with Air Bags Your smartphone should not be placed in a position that would affect the operation of air bag deployment or in a position that, should the air bag inflate, could propel the smartphone. Air bags will inflate with great force and care should be taken to protect within a vehicle that has air bags.

Battery Your smartphone includes an internal lithium ion battery. Please note that use of certain data applications can result in heavy battery use and may require frequent battery charging. Any disposal of the smartphone must comply with laws and regulations pertaining to lithium ion batteries.

CTIA Battery Handling Guidelines

- Only use and/or replace the battery and charging system with the battery or charging system specified for this phone. Use of an unqualified battery or charger or improper battery use may present a risk of fire, explosion, leakage, or other hazard.
- Do not disassemble or open; crush, bend, or deform; puncture or shred the battery.
- Do not short circuit a battery or allow metallic conductive objects to contact battery terminals.
- Do not modify or remanufacture, attempt to insert foreign objects into the battery, immerse or expose to water or other liquids, expose to fire, explosion or other hazard.
- Battery usage by children should be supervised.
- Avoid dropping the phone or battery. If the phone or battery is dropped, especially on a hard surface, and the user suspects damage, take it to a service center for inspection.
- Promptly dispose of used batteries in accordance with local regulations.

Driving Safety Tips Overview

Always obey all laws and regulations on the use of the smartphone in your driving area.

Safety — Your most important call. The Wireless Industry reminds you to use your smartphone safely when driving.

- 1 Get to know your smartphone and its features, such as speed-dial and redial.
- 2 When available, use a hands-free device.
- 3 Position your smartphone within easy reach.
- 4 Let the person you are speaking to know you are driving; if necessary, suspend the call in heavy traffic or hazardous weather conditions.
- 5 Do not take notes or look up phone numbers while driving.
- 6 Dial sensibly and assess the traffic; if possible, place calls when you are not moving or before pulling into traffic.
- 7 Do not engage in stressful or emotional conversations that may divert your attention from the road.
- 8 Dial 911 to report serious emergencies. This is a free call from your smartphone.
- 9 Use your smartphone to help others in emergencies.
- 10 Call roadside assistance or a special non-emergency wireless number when necessary.

Driving Safety Tips Details

- 1 Get to know your smartphone and its features such as speed-dial and redial. Carefully read your instruction manual and learn to take advantage of valuable features most smartphone models offer including, automatic redial and memory dial—most smartphone models can store up to 99 numbers in memory dial. Also, work to memorize the smartphone keyboard so you can use the speed-dial function without taking your attention off the road.
- 2 When available, use a hands-free device. A number of hands-free smartphone accessories are readily available today. Whether you choose an installed mounted device for your smartphone or a speaker phone accessory, take advantage of these devices if available to you.
- 3 Make sure you place your smartphone within easy reach and where you can grab it without removing your eyes from the road. If you get an incoming call at an inconvenient time, let your voicemail answer it for you.

- 4 Suspend conversations during hazardous driving conditions or situations. Let the person you are speaking to know you are driving; if necessary, suspend the call in heavy traffic or hazardous weather conditions. Rain, sleet, snow, and ice can be hazardous, but so is heavy traffic. As a driver, your first responsibility is to pay attention to the road.
- 5 Do not take notes or look up phone numbers while driving. If you are reading an address book or business card while driving a car, or writing a to-do list, then you are not watching where you are going. It's common sense. Don't get caught in a dangerous situation because you are reading or writing and not paying attention to the road or nearby vehicles.
- 6 Dial sensibly and assess the traffic; if possible, place calls when you are not moving or before pulling into traffic. Try to plan your calls before you begin your trip, or attempt to coincide your calls with times you may be stopped at a stop sign, red light or otherwise stationary. But if you need to dial while driving, follow this simple tip: Dial only a few numbers, check the road and your mirrors, then continue.
- 7 Do not engage in stressful or emotional conversations that may be distracting. Stressful or emotional conversations and driving do not mix—they are distracting and even dangerous when you are behind the wheel. Make people you are talking with aware you are driving and if necessary, suspend phone conversations which have the potential to divert your attention from the road.
- 8 Use your smartphone to call for help. Your smartphone is one of the greatest tools you can own to protect yourself and your family in dangerous situations—with your smartphone at your side, help is only three numbers away. Dial 911 in the case of fire, traffic accident, road hazard, or medical emergencies. Remember, 911 is a free call on your smartphone.
- 9 Use your smartphone to help others in emergencies. If you see an auto accident, crime in progress, or other serious emergency where lives are in danger, call 911, as you would want others to do for you.
- 10 Call roadside assistance or a special wireless non-emergency assistance number when necessary. Certain situations you encounter while driving may require attention, but are not urgent enough to merit a call to 911. But you can still use your

smartphone to lend a hand. If you see a broken-down vehicle posing no serious hazard, a broken traffic signal, a minor traffic accident where no one appears injured, or a vehicle you know to be stolen, call roadside assistance or other special non-emergency wireless number.

NOTICE FOR CONSUMERS WITH HEARING DISABILITIES

Digital Wireless Phones to be Compatible with Hearing Aids

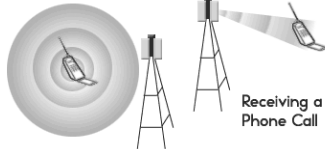
Aids On July 10, 2003, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) modified the exemption for wireless phones under the Hearing Aid Compatibility Act of 1988. This means that wireless phone manufacturers and service providers must make digital wireless phones accessible to individuals who use hearing aids.

For more information, please go to the FCC's Consumer Alert on accessibility of digital wireless phones at fcc.gov/cgb/consumerfacts/hac_wireless.html.

Wireless telephones are hand-held phones with built-in antennas, often called cell, mobile, or PCS phones. These phones are popular with callers because they can be carried easily from place to place.

Wireless telephones are two-way radios. When you talk into a wireless telephone, it picks up your voice and converts the sound to radio frequency energy (or radio waves). The radio waves travel through the air until they reach a receiver at a nearby base station. The base station then sends your call through the telephone network until it reaches the person you are calling.

Making a Phone Call



When you receive a call on your wireless telephone, the message travels through the telephone network until it reaches a base station

close to your wireless phone. Then the base station sends out radio waves that are detected by a receiver in your telephone, where the signals are changed back into the sound of a voice.

The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) each regulate wireless telephones. FCC ensures that all wireless phones sold in the United States follow safety guidelines that limit radio frequency (RF) energy. FDA monitors the health effects of wireless telephones. Each agency has the authority to take action if a wireless phone produces hazardous levels of RF energy.

FDA derives its authority to regulate wireless telephones from the Radiation Control provisions of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (originally enacted as the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968). fda.gov/cdrh/radhealth/.

FCC derives its authority to regulate wireless telephones from the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (NEPA) and the Telecommunications Act of 1996 fcc.gov/telecom.html. Updated 7/16/2003

Hands-Free Capability All CTIA Certified portable products provide the consumer with a toll-free number for the purchase of a compatible hands-free device. 1-800-881-7256

STATIC ELECTRICITY, ESD, AND YOUR PALM DEVICE

Electrostatic discharge (ESD) can cause damage to electronic devices if discharged into the device, so you should take steps to avoid such an occurrence.

Description of ESD Static electricity is an electrical charge caused by the buildup of excess electrons on the surface of a material. To most people, static electricity and ESD are nothing more than annoyances. For example, after walking over a carpet while scuffing your feet, building up electrons on your body, you may get a shock—the discharge event—when you touch a metal doorknob. This little shock discharges the built-up static electricity.

ESD-susceptible equipment Even a small amount of ESD can harm circuitry, so when working with electronic devices, take measures to help protect your electronic devices, including your Palm® device, from ESD harm. While Palm has built protections against ESD into its products, ESD unfortunately exists and, unless

neutralized, could build up to levels that could harm your equipment. Any electronic device that contains an external entry point for plugging in anything from cables to docking stations is susceptible to entry of ESD. Devices that you carry with you, such as your Palm device, build up ESD in a unique way because the static electricity that may have built up on your body is automatically passed to the device. Then, when the device is connected to another device such as a docking station, a discharge event can occur.

Precautions against ESD Make sure to discharge any built-up static electricity from yourself and your electronic devices *before* touching an electronic device or connecting one device to another. The recommendation from Palm is that you take this precaution before connecting your Palm device to your computer, placing the device in a cradle, or connecting it to any other device. You can do this in many ways, including the following:

- Ground yourself when you're holding your device by simultaneously touching a metal surface that is at earth ground. For example, if your computer has a metal case and is plugged into a standard three-prong grounded outlet, touching the case should discharge the ESD on your body.
- Increase the relative humidity of your environment.
- Install ESD-specific prevention items, such as grounding mats.

Conditions that enhance ESD occurrences Conditions that can contribute to the buildup of static electricity in the environment include the following:

- Low relative humidity.
- Material type (The type of material gathering the charge. For example, synthetics are more prone to static buildup than natural fibers like cotton.)
- The rapidity with which you touch, connect, or disconnect electronic devices.

While you should always take appropriate precautions to discharge Electricity, if you are in an environment where you notice ESD events, you may want to take extra precautions to protect your electronic equipment against ESD.

Precaution against hearing loss Protect your hearing. Listening to this device at full volume for a long period of time can damage your hearing.

A pleine puissance, l'écoute prolongée du baladeur peut endommager l'oreille de l'utilisateur. Consultez notre site web palm.com/fr pour plus d'informations.



Specifications

Radio	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• CDMA 800 (Digital Cellular), 1900 (PCS), and 1400 (GPS)• EVDO and 1XRTT
Phone features	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Personal speakerphone• Hands-free headset jack (2.5 mm, 3-barrel connector)• Microphone mute option• TTY compatible• 3-way calling
Processor technology	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Intel XScale™ processor, 312MHz
Expansion	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• SD/MultiMediaCard/SDIO card slot
Battery	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Rechargeable lithium-ion• Removable for replacement• Up to 4.7 hours talk time• Up to 15 days standby• 3.5 hours full charge time
Operating system	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Windows Mobile® 6 Professional
Camera	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Still image capture resolution:1280 x 1024, 1.3 megapixel• Automatic light balance
Size	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 5.08 in x 2.28 in x 0.89 in (129 mm x 58 mm x 22.5 mm) with antenna
Weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 6.4 ounces (180 grams)

Connectivity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Infrared (1.2 compliant) • Bluetooth® wireless technology (1.2 compliant)
Display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Touch-sensitive LCD screen (includes stylus) • 65,536 colors (16-bit color) • Resolution: 240 x 240 • User-adjustable brightness
Keyboard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Built-in QWERTY keyboard plus 5-way navigator • Backlight for low lighting conditions
Included software	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Today/Phone (includes Speed Dial and Dial Pad) • Messaging (text, multimedia, and email) • Internet Explorer Mobile (web browser) • Camera • Pictures & Videos • Windows Media Player Mobile • File Explorer • Contacts • Calendar • Tasks • Notes • Calculator • ActiveSync® • Excel Mobile • Word Mobile • PowerPoint Mobile • Voice Command • Quick Tour • Search • Terminal Services • Picstel PDF Viewer • Bluetooth Plug-in

System requirements	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Windows 2000 Service Pack 4, XP, or Vista (later versions may also be supported)• 32MB of available memory (RAM)• 170MB of free hard disk space• Available USB port
Operating and storage temperature range	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 32°F to 104°F (0°C to 40°C)• 5% to 90% RH

Index

SYMBOLS

- ! on battery icon 20
- * character in phone numbers 45, 58
- # character in phone numbers 45, 58

NUMERICS

- 1st day of week option 191
- 1st letter capitalization 256
- 1xRTT data services 73
- 1xRTT technology 297
- 411 phone calls 45
- 5-way navigator 27, 30, 295
- 911 calls 74
- 911 phone calls 45, 71, 256

A

- A2DP technology 297
- abbreviated dialing 68–69
- accented characters 36
- accessing
 - alternate characters 36
 - applications 251
 - calculator 240
 - menu items 31, 32

- on-device help 11
- online address books 120
- online support 11
- Outlook folders 286
- remote files 267
- the Internet 145, 266
- voicemail systems 51
- accessories 15
- accounts
 - accessing Internet and 280
 - enabling phone as modem and 158
 - enabling TTY/TDD devices and 305
 - getting device phone number and 23
 - getting help with 12
 - getting started and 11
 - getting voicemail and 51, 52
 - making phone calls and 52, 54, 56, 57
 - preventing unauthorized use of 256, 257, 263
 - removing email 108
 - sending email and 101, 290
 - sending messages and 281
- action keys. *See* softkeys
- actions 248
- activating smartphone 22
- active call info 52, 53, 55
 - See also* phone calls
- ActiveSync
 - defined 297
 - downloading 84
 - installing 84–86
 - opening 86, 87
 - receiving email and 116
 - reinstalling 273
 - troubleshooting 283–288
- ActiveSync desktop software 10, 80, 84, 297
- ActiveSync icon 86, 87, 89, 201
- Add Contact prompt 54
- Add new device option 62, 156
- Add Picture/Video command 138
- Add Recipient command 120, 136, 138
- Add Server Source command 91

- Add to Favorites command 150
- Add to Personal Address
 - Book command 286
- adding
 - a second call 55
 - appointments 187, 188
 - attachments 115, 131
 - Bluetooth devices 62
 - contacts 118, 183
 - expansion cards 236
 - files to playlists 178
 - notes 184, 193, 195, 196
 - passkeys 63
 - Quick Keys 58
 - speed-dial buttons 57–59
 - tasks 192–193
 - untimed events 187
 - web favorites 149–150
- address books 119–120, 125, 185, 286
- addresses
 - copying 286
 - entering email 114, 115, 125, 183
 - entering multiple 115, 136
 - entering web 147
 - getting 120, 125, 185
 - highlighting 30
 - searching for web 40
 - selecting 292
 - sending text messages and 135, 136, 138
 - synchronizing 286
 - verifying 119
- adjusting brightness 248
- Adobe Flash Player 83, 84
- advancing slides 141, 171, 209, 210
- After calls from numbers... option 70
- Agenda View (calendar) 186
- alarm clock 262
- alarm icon 262
- alarm sounds 262
- alarms
 - adding 187, 192, 193
 - setting 248, 262
 - turning on and off 247
- albums 170
- alerts 70, 75, 107
 - See also* alarms; notifications
- aligning the screen 250
- alignment settings 207, 211
- Allow cookies option 153
- Alt key 36
- alternate characters 36, 37
- alternate phone numbers 46
- analog clock 249
- animated connection icon 89
- animation 174, 209, 210
- anniversaries 188
- answering phone calls 50, 55
- antenna 305
- application icons 38, 251
- applications
 - See also* third-party applications
 - assigning to buttons 251
 - choosing menu items in 30, 31, 32
 - closing 38–39, 264
 - copying 239
 - customizing 251–256
 - deleting 232–233
 - displaying 264
 - downloading 229, 231
 - enabling error reporting for 263–264
 - highlighting 38
 - included with device 312
 - installing 229–232, 294
 - opening 38, 237, 251
 - running from expansion cards 237
 - running multiple 38

- scrolling in 28
- searching in 228
- selecting 38
- switching between 53, 54
- synchronizing info in 80, 81, 96
- troubleshooting 275, 277, 294
- turning sounds on or off for 247
- viewing memory usage for 264
- appointment settings 191
- appointments
 - adding 187
 - creating reminders for 187, 192
 - deleting 191
 - marking as private 189
 - scheduling repeating 188
 - troubleshooting 287
 - viewing 186, 187
- area codes 68, 185
- arrow icons 27
- arrow keys 28
- attachments
 - adding 115, 131
 - downloading 117–118
 - embedding objects in 118
 - opening 117
 - setting maximum size 127
 - storing 117, 125, 295
 - troubleshooting 291
- attendees 189
- audio 50, 174, 306
- authentication 119
- Auto Correct option 255
- auto-completion options 255
- AutoCorrect command 173
- Autofill option 215
- AutoFilter options 211, 218
- AutoFit option 217
- Auto-Keyguard 256, 257
- Auto-lock list 258
- Automatic Send/Receive option 128
- Automatically Collect
 - Messages option 143
- auto-off interval 265, 297
- B**
- backgrounds 164, 172, 180, 245
- backing up info 275, 283
- backlight (keyboard) 34, 266
- Backlight Settings screen 34, 266
- backlight shut-off interval 35
- Backspace key 30, 36, 47
- backup and restore app 89
- backup utilities 273, 276
- backups, restoring 276, 283
- banners (calendar) 188
- battery
 - charging 19–20, 88
 - checking status of 19, 20, 74, 265
 - connecting to Bluetooth devices and 154
 - conserving 20–21, 38, 266
 - disposing of 276, 307
 - draining 278
 - inserting 18
 - replacing 18, 276–277
 - resetting device and 275
- battery handling guidelines 307
- battery icon 19, 74
- battery specifications 311
- beaming 21, 233–235, 297
- birthdays 188
- blank screens 278
- Block Recognizer option 254
- Bluetooth connections
 - synchronizing over 94

- Bluetooth devices
 - See also* hands-free devices
 - adding 62
 - beaming over 234
 - connecting to 154–157
 - conserving battery and 20, 21
 - enabling phone as modem and 159
 - entering passkeys for 156, 157
 - resetting device and 275
 - selecting 156
 - synchronizing over 94–95
 - transferring calls to 64
 - troubleshooting 281
 - Bluetooth feature, turning on or off 62, 95, 155, 266
 - Bluetooth icon 62, 74, 95, 155
 - Bluetooth Qualification Program 305
 - Bluetooth range 154
 - Bluetooth status indicator 74
 - Bluetooth technology 297
 - bonus software 230, 312
 - bookmarks 149
 - See also* favorites
 - border highlight 29
 - Brightness command 167
 - brightness, adjusting 248
 - broadband technology 298
 - BroadbandAccess data services 73, 298
 - browsing files and folders 228, 239
 - browsing the web. *See* web browsing
 - built-in applications 232, 233
 - built-in camera. *See* camera
 - burst mode (camera) 166
 - button settings (Media Player) 180
 - buttons
 - assigning to apps 251
 - assigning voice commands to 252
 - creating speed-dial 57–59
 - customizing voicemail 59
 - disabling 256
 - reassigning 251–252
 - selecting 28, 29
 - turning sounds on or off for 247
 - Buttons icon 252
 - Buttons Settings screen 251, 252
- C**
- CAB files 231
 - calculations 214, 240
 - Calculator application 240–241
 - Calculator icon 240
 - calendar
 - adding items to 187, 188, 189, 192
 - displaying 186
 - hiding items on 189
 - moving through 186
 - removing items 191, 194
 - setting alarms for 187, 192, 193
 - sorting tasks on 194
 - synchronizing 81, 85
 - troubleshooting 287
 - unavailable slots on 190
 - Calendar application
 - adding contacts and 183
 - customizing 191–192
 - managing schedules with 187–191
 - opening 186
 - sending meeting requests and 130
 - Calendar icon 186
 - calendar settings 191–192

- calendar views 186, 191
- call forwarding 57
- call forwarding icon 57
- Call in Progress entry 53
- Call Log 48, 49
- Call Sender command 140
- call waiting 55
- caller ID applications 294
- caller ID blocking 54
- caller IDs 66, 164, 183
- camcorder icon 165
- camera
 - capturing videos 166–167
 - conserving battery 20
 - conserving memory 295
 - overview 164
 - taking pictures 165–166
 - troubleshooting 293
- Camera application 164–169
- Camera icon 165
- camera settings 166, 167–169
- camera specifications 311
- Cancel Bluetooth command 64
- cancelling selections 33
- capitalization 35, 256
- Caps Lock icon 35
- Caps Lock mode 35
- captions 138
- car kit 61
- car kits 60, 61, 64
- carrying cases 15
- cascading menus 32
- case-sensitive searching 205, 220
- cell phones. *See* wireless phones
- cells (spreadsheets) 216, 217, 221
- certificates 127, 147, 230, 262, 263
- Certificates icon 263
- changing
 - alarm sounds 262
 - calendar views 186
 - color themes 245, 250
 - connections 267
 - contacts 184
 - date and time settings 260
 - email accounts 108, 114
 - lock codes 258
 - picture or video resolution 166, 167
 - speed-dial buttons 59
- character sets 152
- characters
 - See also* text
 - capitalizing 35, 256
 - entering 34, 35, 214, 254
 - highlighting 30
 - moving to specific 28
 - typing alternate 36
- charge indicator light 19
- charging smartphone battery 19–20, 88
- charging status 19, 20
- charts 211, 219
- check boxes 29
- Check name against this server option 120
- chronological list of calls 48
- Clear “MMS” command 141
- Clear “Text Messages” command 141
- Clear Cookies button 153
- Clear Now Playing command 179
- clearing History list 153
- clock 249
- Clock & Alarms icon 249, 260
- Clock & Alarms Settings screen 260, 261
- closing
 - applications 38–39, 264
 - drop-down lists 33

- Media Player Mobile 177
- menus 32
- notification screens 139
- screens 29
- color settings 293
- color themes 245, 250
- columns (spreadsheets) 216, 217
- commands. *See* menu items; voice commands
- Company Directory
 - command 120, 136, 138, 185
- company names 49, 184
- completed tasks 193
- compliance statement 305
- compressed files 229
- computers
 - charging device and 20
 - connecting to 79, 87–88, 263
 - downloading ringtones
 - from 64
 - enabling phone as modem and 160
 - installing apps and 231, 232
 - installing sync software on 85
 - reinstalling desktop software on 273
 - synchronizing with 83–87, 96, 97, 163, 201
 - transferring media files and 175
- conference calls 56
- confidential events 190
- configurations,
 - troubleshooting 281
- Configure Server command 91
- configuring
 - data services 281
 - trusted devices 154, 155
 - TTY/TDD devices 67, 71
- confirmation messages 125, 143
- conformity statement 305
- Connect Bluetooth
 - command 64
- Connect command 268
- Connect via Bluetooth
 - command 95
- Connect via IR command 96
- connecting smartphone to PCs 79, 87–88
- connection settings 266–268
- connection status icons 72
- connections
 - accessing corporate servers and 267
 - browsing websites and 145, 147, 159, 180
 - changing 267
 - communicating over Bluetooth 94, 154, 155, 157
 - creating 267
 - disabling data 70
 - enabling phone as modem and 158, 159
 - enabling TTY/TDD 67, 71
 - ending 268
 - losing 282
 - making phone calls and 54
 - manually starting 268
 - selecting 267
 - setting network 70
 - synchronizing over wireless 80, 90, 94, 95
 - timing out 289
 - troubleshooting 279–282, 292
- Connections icon 267
- Connections screen 267
- connectivity specs 312

- conserving smartphone
 - battery 20–21, 38, 266
- contact categories 184
- contact lookup feature 45, 46, 184
- contact names, dialing by 46–47
- contacts
 - adding 118, 183
 - assigning ringtones 66, 171, 184
 - assigning speed-dial buttons to 57, 58
 - calling 46, 54, 67, 69, 183
 - editing 184
 - getting from address
 - books 120, 185
 - removing 185
 - searching for 47, 184
 - selecting 184
 - sending mail to 136, 138
 - setting communication
 - method for 47
 - synchronizing 81, 85
 - transferring to car kits 64
 - viewing info about 47, 185
- Contacts app 183–185
- Contacts list 136, 138, 185
- context-sensitive menus 32
- continuous playback 210
- cookies 147, 153
- copying
 - addresses 286
 - applications 239
 - phone numbers 48, 49, 152
 - pictures or videos 172
 - text 151–152, 206
- copyrighted items 171
- corporate mail 102, 111, 112, 267
- corporate passwords 92
- corporate servers 85, 263, 267, 291
- coupling 296
- coverage areas 21, 43, 73
- creating
 - appointments 188
 - connections 267
 - contacts 118, 183
 - documents 204, 205
 - email messages 114–115
 - folders 208
 - lists 207
 - meeting requests 130, 189
 - multimedia messages 137–139
- notes 184, 193, 195, 196
- passkeys 63, 156
- playlists 178
- Quick Keys 58
- reminders 187, 192, 193, 194
- speed-dial buttons 57–59
- tasks 192–193
- text messages 135–136
- untimed events 187
- video ringtones 171
- web favorites 149–150
- workbooks 212

- cropping pictures 173
- currency formats 250
- currency symbols 250
- customer assistance 11
- Customer Feedback icon 269
- customer service 12
- customizing
 - applications 251–256
 - Calendar 191–192
 - contacts 185
 - device screen 248–251
 - Excel Mobile 221
 - Internet Explorer Mobile 152–153
 - Media Player Mobile 179
 - multimedia messages 142

- Notes application 197
- PDF Viewer 223
- phone settings 64–72
- system info 260
- system sounds 246–248
- Tasks application 194
- text messages 142
- Today screen 245
- voicemail buttons 59
- Word Mobile 209
- cutting. *See* deleting

D

- data. *See* information
- data connections. *See* connections
- data service icons 280
- data service plans 11
 - See also* accounts
- data services 280, 281
 - See also* service providers
- date formats 250
- dates 215, 250, 260, 261
 - See also* calendar
- Day View 186, 191
- day-planner formats 186
- decimals 250
- decompression utility 229
- delays 281

- Deleted folder 126
- deleting
 - applications 232–233
 - certificates 263
 - contacts 185
 - cookies 153
 - directory services 120
 - documents 208
 - email 121–122, 126, 129
 - email accounts 108
 - events 191
 - files 229
 - items from libraries 177
 - items in playlists 178, 179
 - messages 141
 - notes 197
 - partnerships 157, 282
 - pictures or videos 173
 - speed-dial buttons 59
 - tasks 194
 - text 30, 47
 - web favorites 150
 - web files 153
 - workbooks 221
- desktop software 298
 - See also* applications; software
- device. *See* smartphone
- device components 15–17

- device conflicts 294
- device names 300
- devices
 - See also* Bluetooth devices; smartphone
 - beaming to 234
 - conserving battery and 20
 - discovering trusted 154, 155, 157
 - setting up TTY/TDD 67, 71
 - transferring info from 273
- diagnostic information 263
- Dial Lookup field 40, 44, 47
- Dial Lookup list 22
- Dial Pad 47–48, 49, 67
- Dial Pad command 48
- dialing 44–48, 49, 57, 68
- dialing instructions 45
- dialing preferences 68–69
- dialing boxes 298
- Dialpad tone setting 67
- digital cameras 170
 - See also* camera
- digital certificates 127, 147, 230, 262, 263
- digital clock 249
- digital signatures 127
- dimmed images 278
- Direct Push Technology 90

- directory services 119, 120, 125, 185
- Disconnect Bluetooth command 95
- Disconnect command 268
- discovering trusted devices 154, 155, 157
- disk space 313
- display. *See* screen
- display formats 249–250
- display names 104, 106
- display options (web) 148
- display settings (screen) 248–251
- displaying
 - alternate characters 36
 - animated images 174
 - application menus 31, 32
 - appointments 186, 187
 - calendar 186
 - contact info 47, 185
 - events 188, 190
 - memory usage 264
 - on-device help 11
 - PDF files 203, 222, 223
 - pictures 170
 - running applications 264
 - space on device 264
 - space on expansion cards 264
 - speed-dial buttons 46
 - tasks 194
 - text messages 139, 140
 - voicemail messages 51
 - web favorites 150
 - web pages 147, 148
- document file types 203, 209
- documentation 10, 12, 43
- documents
 - See also* Word Mobile
 - creating 204, 205
 - deleting 208
 - formatting in 206–207
 - moving text in 206
 - opening 204
 - renaming 208
 - saving 203, 204, 206, 209
 - searching 205
 - setting margins for 207
 - spell-checking 207–208
- documents list 209
- Download messages option 128
- Download size limit list 92, 127
- downloading
 - ActiveSync 84
 - Adobe Flash Player 84
 - applications 229, 231
 - attachments 117–118
 - email 92, 115–117, 126, 128
 - files 151
 - images 174
 - multimedia messages 139, 143
 - Outlook 81
 - Palm info and updates 11
 - pictures 151
 - ringtones 64
 - videos 174
- Downloads favorite 151
- downloads page (Verizon) 151
- down-pointing arrows 33
- drained battery 20
- drawing 195
- drivers 274
- driving safety tips 307–308
- Drop and Answer command 55
- drop-down lists
 - cancelling selection in 33
 - closing 33
 - highlighting in 28, 30, 33
 - scrolling through 28

- selecting items in 33
- drop-down menus 32
- dummy expansion card 236

E

- earpiece 296
- echoes 296
- Edit sender's message
 - option 121
- Edit Server Settings screen 91
- Edit Speed Dial command 59
- email
 - See also* email accounts; email messages
 - adding contacts and 118, 183
 - conserving battery and 21
 - conserving memory and 115, 128
 - downloading 92, 115–117, 126, 128
 - getting from corporate servers 267, 291
 - overview 99
 - saving passwords for 104
 - sending 115, 116, 121, 129, 131, 149

- setting security options for 127
- synchronizing 80, 81, 85, 116
- troubleshooting 290–292
- email accounts
 - changing 114
 - deleting 108
 - editing 108
 - entering display names for 104, 106
 - selecting 113–114, 118, 124
 - setting up 101–113
 - troubleshooting 289
- email applications 292
- email client software 291
- email messages
 - See also* email adding attachments 115, 131
 - adding signatures 122–123
 - addressing 114, 115, 119, 125
 - checking for 72
 - creating 114–115
 - deleting 121–122, 126, 129

- dialing from 49
- downloading attachments
 - with 117–118
- finding 121
- forwarding 121
- opening attachments in 117
- receiving 115–117, 126, 128
- replying to 121, 124
- saving 115
- setting maximum size 130
- setting priority 115
- storing copies of 124
- email service providers 103, 105, 289, 290
- email settings 123–130
- email shortcuts 122
- emergency calls 45, 71, 74, 256, 259
- emptying Deleted folder 126
- Enable Clear Type option 249
- encoding 152
- encryption 127, 147, 240
- End User License Agreement 10
- ending data connections 268
- entry fields
 - deleting text in 30

- highlighting text in 30
 - moving to 28
 - opening lists in 33
 - scrolling through 28
- Erase all data? prompt 276
- erasing. *See* deleting
- error messages 247
- See also* errors
- error reporting 263–264
- Error Reporting icon 264
- errors 263, 279, 288
- EVDO data services 73
- EVDO technology 298
- event categories 190
- event icons 192
- Event option 248
- See also* actions
- events
- adding reminders 187, 192
 - creating 187
 - deleting 191
 - displaying 190
 - filtering 190
 - marking as sensitive 189
 - synchronizing 85
- Excel files 199
- See also* Excel Mobile; spreadsheets
- Excel Mobile 210, 212, 221
- Excel Mobile icon 212
- Exchange ActiveSync 80, 90, 291, 298
- Exchange Address Book 286
- Exchange servers
- changing lock settings 289
 - conserving battery and 93
 - finding contacts and 185
 - getting email from 115, 116
 - sending email over 101, 102, 106, 119
 - sending meeting requests and 189
 - setting up 90–92
 - synchronizing with 21, 80, 85, 90, 92, 93
 - troubleshooting 288–289, 291
- expansion card slot 236, 311
- expansion cards
- browsing 228, 229, 239
 - conserving memory and 295
 - encrypting 240
 - formatting 236
 - inserting 236–237
 - installing to 232
- moving information to 208, 220, 238
- opening items on 237
 - organizing pictures and videos on 172
 - purchasing 236
 - renaming 239
 - searching on 227
 - storing info and 151, 235
 - transferring files to 174, 177, 237
 - viewing space on 239, 264
- extensions (phone) 58, 68
- external power sources 265
- Extra Digits option 58
- ## F
- factory defaults 180
- favorites 81, 149–150
- See also* web pages
- Favorites application 81
- features (smartphone) 9
- feedback 296
- fields. *See* entry fields
- File Explorer 228–229, 238, 239
- File Explorer icon 228
- file names 169, 206, 227

- file servers 116
- file types
 - documents 203, 209
 - media 174
 - multimedia 137
 - pictures 170
 - ringtones 64
 - videos 170
- files
 - accessing from corporate accounts 267
 - attaching to messages 127, 131, 138
 - browsing 228
 - decompressing 229
 - deleting 229
 - downloading 151
 - renaming 208
 - saving 237, 238
 - searching for 227
 - transferring to expansion cards 174, 177, 237
 - viewing info about 179
- filtering
 - events 190
 - information 184, 218
 - tasks 194
- finding
 - company names 49, 120
 - contacts 47, 184
 - email messages 121
 - information 220
 - text 205
- firewalls 283, 285
- 1st letter capitalization 256
- First Synchronization dialog 112, 113
- Fit to page option 223
- Fit To Screen option 148
- Fit to width option 223
- 5-way navigator 27, 30, 295
- Flash Player 83, 84
- folder names 208
- folders
 - accessing Outlook 286
 - browsing 228, 239
 - creating 150, 208
 - moving items to 208, 220
 - organizing pictures and videos in 172
 - organizing web favorites in 149, 150
 - receiving mail and 116
 - searching 227
 - sorting contents 229
 - synchronizing info and 87
- font options 207, 211
- fonts 207, 211, 249
- forgetting passwords 259
- formats
 - capturing videos and 166
 - opening workbooks and 212
 - saving voice notes and 255
 - saving Word documents and 203, 206
 - saving workbooks and 210, 212
 - sending email and 126, 129
 - setting region-specific 249–250
 - taking pictures and 165
 - viewing slide shows and 168
- formatting
 - dates 250
 - expansion cards 236
 - numbers 211, 250
 - spreadsheets 211, 217
 - text 206
- Formatting toolbar 207
- forms (web pages) 149
- formulas (spreadsheets) 211, 214, 221
- forwarded calls icon 73

- forwarding
 - messages 121
 - phone calls 57
 - forwarding codes (phone) 57
 - freeing memory 232, 288, 295
 - Freeze Panes option 213
 - full charge (battery) 19
 - full screen mode 148
 - functions (spreadsheets) 211, 215
- G**
- games 20
 - gestures 254
 - Getting Started CD 10, 84, 230
 - Global Address Lists 90, 119, 120, 125, 185
 - Global Input Options setting 197
 - graphics programs 172
- H**
- hands-free car kits 60, 61, 64
 - hands-free devices
 - See also* Bluetooth devices
 - connecting to 61–63
 - enabling Keyguard for 257
 - entering passkeys for 63
 - making phone calls and 60, 64
 - purchasing 309
 - troubleshooting 281
 - hanging indents 207
 - hanging up phone 53, 55
 - hard resets 275–276
 - hardware 9
 - headphones 174
 - headset button 61
 - headsets
 - configuring as trusted devices 154, 155
 - connecting 60–61
 - enabling Keyguard for 257
 - listening to music and 61
 - making calls and 64
 - troubleshooting 282
 - hearing aids 308
 - help 11, 38, 271
 - hiding
 - calendar items 189
 - images 148
 - speed-dial buttons 46
 - highlight 29
 - highlighting
 - applications 38
 - email addresses 30
 - items on Today screen 53
 - menu items 31, 32
 - options in lists 28, 33
 - phone numbers 45, 49
 - text 30, 151, 207
 - web links 29, 149
 - hints (passwords) 259
 - History list 152, 153
 - holding phone calls 53
 - home locations 260
 - home page (browser) 152
 - Hotmail 102
 - HTML formats 117, 121
 - hypertext links. *See* links
- I**
- icons. *See* specific
 - idle setting 44
 - Ignore command 55
 - Ignore with text message command 55
 - ignoring phone calls 55
 - image files 137, 170, 295
 - images
 - See also* pictures
 - downloading 174
 - embedding 118
 - hiding web page 148

- incorrect color settings
 - and 293
 - resizing 292
 - setting background 172, 245
 - IMAP email accounts 102, 103–110, 118
 - Inbox 116, 139, 140, 141
 - Include file attachments
 - option 117
 - indentation 207
 - indicator light 19, 43
 - information
 - backing up 275, 283
 - displaying 39
 - entering 34, 35–36, 79, 183, 212, 215
 - filtering 184, 218
 - finding and replacing 220
 - losing 203, 210, 275, 276
 - moving 208, 220, 238
 - organizing 225
 - protecting 256–260
 - restoring 89, 275, 276
 - searching for 227–228
 - sharing 233
 - sorting 218
 - storing 235, 295
 - transferring 273
 - updating 79
 - infrared port. *See* IR port
 - infrared transmissions 95–96, 234, 298
 - Input icon 254
 - Input Method options 254
 - input options 34
 - inserting device battery 18
 - inserting expansion cards 236–237
 - installation, troubleshooting 275, 294
 - installing
 - applications 229–232, 294
 - bonus software 230
 - Media Player 81
 - Outlook 81
 - sync software 79, 84–86
 - VPN clients 267
 - Windows drivers 274
 - instant messaging
 - applications 294
 - interference 306
 - internal memory 295
 - See also* memory
 - International Dialing Prefix options 68
 - Internet 145, 159, 231, 266
 - See also* web browsing
 - Internet Connection Speed
 - option 180
 - Internet connections,
 - troubleshooting 280–281, 292
 - Internet email accounts 102, 106, 111
 - Internet Explorer Mobile
 - browsing with 147–152
 - closing 149
 - customizing 152–153
 - getting mail and 102
 - installing from 231
 - scrolling in 28
 - starting 147
 - troubleshooting 292
 - Internet service providers.
 - See* ISPs
 - IP-based push updating 90
 - IR port 95, 233, 298
 - ISPs 102, 105, 266, 290
- K**
- Keep copies of sent items in
 - Sent folder option 115
 - key presses 34, 251
 - keyboard
 - accessing alternate characters on 36

- dialing from 45, 47, 48, 49
 - entering info 34, 35–36, 255
 - locking 256
 - scrolling with 28
 - selecting menu items 32
 - troubleshooting 295
 - keyboard backlight 34, 266
 - keyboard icon 34
 - keyboard specifications 312
 - Keyguard 256, 257
 - Keyguard icon 257
 - keys (keyboard) 34, 251, 254
 - Known Caller option 65
- L**
- laptop computers 158
 - LCD. *See* screen
 - LED light 19, 43
 - Letter Recognizer option 254
 - libraries 175, 176, 177
 - Library screen 176, 180
 - License Agreement 10
 - lightning bolt 19
 - li-ion battery 298
 - See also* battery
 - links
 - clearing 153, 295
 - highlighting 29
 - selecting 124, 149
 - sending 149
 - troubleshooting 292
- lists
- cancelling selection in 33
 - closing 33
 - creating 207
 - formatting 207
 - highlighting in 28, 30, 33
 - indenting text in 207
 - scrolling through 28, 149
 - selecting items in 33
- lithium ion battery 298
- See also* battery
- locating
- company names 49, 120
 - contacts 47, 184
 - email messages 121
- Location Privacy icon 71, 74
- Location Privacy setting 71
- lock codes 256, 257, 258
- Lock icon 148, 171, 259
- lock settings 289
- locking
- device keyboard 256
 - device screen 257
 - device system 258–259
 - phone feature 256, 257
- spreadsheet rows and columns 213
- logging in to
- corporate servers 267
 - networks 263
- looking up company names 49
- looking up contacts 47, 184
- losing
- connections 282
 - information 203, 210, 275, 276
 - passwords 259
 - smartphone 89, 260
- low coverage areas 279
- low light conditions 34
- lowercase letters 35

M

- magnification. *See* zoom settings
- mail. *See* email
- Manage existing connections option 267, 268
- Manage Folders command 116
- management tools 225
- maps 292
- margins 207

- Match case option 205, 220
- Match entire cells option 220
- Match whole words only
 - option 205
- measurement units 250
- media features 161
- media file types 170, 174
- media files
 - adding to playlists 178
 - playing 175–177
 - selecting 176, 177
 - streaming 177
 - synchronizing 81, 163–164, 174
 - transferring 174–175, 177
 - troubleshooting 287
 - viewing info about 179
- media libraries 175, 176, 177
- Media Player 81, 163, 174, 287
- Media Player Mobile 174–180
- media players 20
- Media sync option 175
- meeting invitations. *See* meeting requests
- meeting requests 120, 130–131, 188–189, 192
- memory
 - browsing web and 153
 - freeing 232, 288, 295
 - running apps and 38, 237
 - sending mail and 115, 128
 - storing numbers in 241
 - viewing usage 264
- memory buttons 241
- memory dial 307
- Memory icon 239
- Memory Settings screen 39
- memos. *See* messages;
notes
- menu items 30, 31, 32
- Menu key 31, 32
- menus 30, 31, 32
- Menus icon 251
- Menus screen 251
- Message format option 126
- Message Overview
 - command 140
- message preferences 142–143
- message templates 140
- messages
 - See also* email; specific type
 - addressing to multiple recipients 115, 136
 - dialing from 49
 - playing voicemail 51, 52, 59
 - recording 138
 - synchronizing 81
 - viewing voicemail 51
- Messaging application
 - adding contacts and 183
 - downloading attachments and 118
 - opening 114
 - receiving meeting requests and 130
 - receiving messages and 140
 - sending email from 113, 114, 119, 123
 - sending messages and 135, 142
 - setting up email accounts and 103, 105
- messaging applications 294
- messaging services 281, 298, 300
- Messaging softkey 114
- microphone 53, 169, 296
- microphone icon 253
- Microsoft ActiveSync. *See* ActiveSync desktop

- software; Exchange
 - ActiveSync
 - Microsoft Media Player. *See* Media Player
 - Microsoft Office. *See* specific app
 - Microsoft Windows Mobile
 - software [230](#), [231](#)
 - mirror [165](#), [167](#)
 - Missed call option [65](#)
 - MMS messaging [135](#), [298](#)
 - See also* multimedia messages
 - mobile accounts. *See* accounts
 - Mobile Device [299](#)
 - Mobile Device Center. *See* Windows Mobile Device Center
 - mobile devices [234](#), [273](#)
 - Mobile Favorites folder [81](#)
 - mobile networks [279](#)
 - mobile phone numbers [183](#)
 - mobile phones. *See* wireless phones
 - Mobile to Market certificates [230](#)
 - Modem Link icon [158](#)
 - modems [154](#), [158–160](#)
 - Month View [186](#)
 - most recently dialed numbers list [48](#)
 - moving
 - documents [208](#)
 - files to expansion cards [174](#), [177](#), [237](#)
 - information [208](#), [220](#), [238](#)
 - pictures or videos [172](#)
 - speed-dial buttons [59](#)
 - text [206](#)
 - workbooks [220](#)
 - moving around the screen [27–29](#)
 - MP3 player [246](#)
 - multi-line fields [28](#)
 - multimedia file types [137](#)
 - multimedia files [295](#)
 - multimedia messages
 - checking for [73](#)
 - creating [137–139](#)
 - customizing [142](#)
 - deleting [141](#)
 - dialing from [49](#)
 - downloading [139](#), [143](#)
 - opening [140](#)
 - previewing [139](#)
 - replying to [139](#), [140](#)
 - sending [139](#)
 - sorting [141](#)
 - storing [295](#)
 - troubleshooting [281](#)
 - Multimedia Messaging System. *See* MMS messaging
 - MultiMediaCard cards [236](#)
 - multiple recipients [115](#), [136](#)
 - music [50](#), [161](#), [174](#), [246](#)
 - See also* media files; playlists
 - music files [61](#), [163](#), [287](#)
 - Mute icon [53](#)
 - My Device folder [228](#)
 - My Device library [177](#)
 - My Documents folder [163](#), [227](#), [275](#)
 - My Pictures folder [165](#), [166](#)
 - My Playlists category [178](#)
 - My Storage Card library [177](#)
 - My Text phrases [115](#), [136](#), [139](#)
- ## N
- names
 - See also* device names; usernames
 - dialing by company [49](#)
 - dialing by contact [46–47](#)

- finding company 120, 184
 - finding contact 47, 184
 - grouping pictures and 169
 - naming
 - document files 206
 - expansion cards 239
 - folders 208
 - speed-dial buttons 57
 - templates 205, 213
 - workbooks 212, 220
 - worksheets 217
 - NationalAccess data services 73
 - NationalAccess technology 299
 - navigation features 27
 - navigator buttons 27, 30, 295
 - network features 12
 - network icons 73
 - network protocols 179
 - network services 43
 - See also* accounts
 - network settings 70–71, 179
 - networks
 - connecting to 70
 - logging in to 263
 - troubleshooting 279–282
 - New Speed Dial command 57
 - note settings 197
 - notes
 - adding 184, 193
 - creating 195, 196
 - deleting 197
 - saving 197
 - Notes application 195–197
 - Notes icon 195
 - Notes list 196, 197
 - notification options 248
 - notification screens. *See* notifications
 - notifications
 - browsing websites and 153
 - receiving Bluetooth transmissions and 157
 - receiving messages and 139, 142
 - receiving phone calls and 55, 66, 70
 - receiving voice commands and 253
 - receiving voicemail 52
 - setting ringtones for 65–66
 - silencing sounds for 246
 - troubleshooting 281
 - turning on or off 248
 - Now Playing playlist 176, 178, 179
 - number sign symbol 250
 - numbers
 - See also* phone numbers
 - entering 34, 35, 215, 241
 - formatting 211, 250
 - pasting into Calculator 241
- ## O
- Office files 199, 201
 - See also* specific app
 - offline synchronization 286
 - online address books 119–120, 125, 185
 - online support (Palm) 11
 - Open URL command 177
 - opening
 - alternate characters list 36
 - application menus 30, 31, 32
 - applications 38, 237, 251
 - calculator 240
 - Call Log 49
 - device keyboard 34
 - Dial Pad 48, 49
 - documents 204

- email applications 292
- email attachments 117
- File Explorer 228
- multimedia messages 140
- on-device help 11
- PDF files 222, 223
- PDF Viewer 203
- Quick Tour 11
- sync applications 86, 87
- sync software window 86
- Today screen 39
- web pages 147, 149, 152, 292
- Wireless Manager 43
- workbooks 213
- operating system (device) 300, 311
- operating systems (PCs) 83
- operational warnings 275, 306–307
- Option key 28, 35, 38, 45
- Option Lock icon 35
- Option Lock key 241
- Option Lock mode 35
- options
 - displaying 190
 - highlighting 28, 29, 33
 - selecting 33
- Options screen (Internet Explorer) 152, 153
- organizer features 44, 181
- orientation (screen) 251
- orientation (slides) 210
- outgoing mail server alert 107
- outgoing server settings 108–109
- Outlook
 - accessing folders for 286
 - copying addresses from 286
 - downloading 81
 - getting mail from 101, 116, 117, 126, 291
 - installing 81
 - synchronizing with 80, 90, 120, 274
- overdue tasks 194
- owner information 260
- Owner Information icon 260
- P**
- paired relationships. *See* partnerships
- pairing. *See* partnerships
- Palm online support 11
- Palm OS devices 273
- Palm OS software 273
- paragraphs 30, 207
- partial battery icon 20
- partial envelope icon 117
- partnerships 154, 157, 282, 299
- passkeys 63, 156, 157
- password types 45, 259
- passwords
 - entering 36, 91, 259
 - forgetting 259
 - locking device and 256, 258, 259
 - making phone calls and 58
 - opening spreadsheets and 211
 - saving 104, 107
 - setting up email accounts and 104, 107, 111
 - storing on smartphone 92
- Pause playback option 179
- PCS phones. *See* wireless phones
- PCs. *See* computers
- PDF files 117, 199, 203, 222–223
- PDF Viewer 199, 203, 222–223
- PDF Viewer icon 222

- performance 277, 294
- Personal Address Book 286
- personal computers. *See* computers
- personal events 189
- personal identification numbers (PINs) 300
- personal information 258, 260, 275
- personal information managers. *See* PIM software; PIMs
- phone
 - See also* phone calls;
 - phone numbers;
 - smartphone
 - activating 22
 - answering 50, 55
 - connecting to headsets 60–61
 - conserving battery and 21
 - dialing 44–48, 49, 57, 68
 - disabling touch-sensitivity for 256
 - driving and 60, 307
 - getting forwarding codes for 57
 - getting started with 22–23, 41, 52
 - hanging up 53, 55
 - locking 256, 257
 - playing music and 50
 - redialing 48
 - resetting device and 275
 - running apps and 53, 54
 - setting network preferences for 70–71
 - setting privacy options 71
 - setting ringtones 65–66
 - silencing ringer for 50
 - troubleshooting 281, 296
 - turning on or off 43, 266
 - waking up screen for 53
- phone as modem feature 154, 158–160
- phone calls
 - See also* phone; phone numbers
 - adding a second 55
 - adjusting volume for 66
 - customizing sounds for 66
 - ending 53, 55
 - forwarding 57
 - ignoring 50, 55
 - making 22, 44–48, 49, 52, 53, 140
 - placing on hold 53
 - receiving 50, 52, 53
 - sending to voicemail 50, 55
 - setting up conference 56
 - switching between 56
 - transferring 64
 - viewing info about 52, 53, 55, 72
- Phone dialog box 49
- phone features 311
- phone headsets. *See* headsets
- phone numbers
 - See also* phone calls
 - adding prefixes to 68
 - adding to contacts 67, 69
 - assigning to speed-dial buttons 57
 - copying and pasting 48, 49, 152
 - dialing extra digits with 58, 69
 - entering 44–48, 49, 68
 - getting device 23
 - getting from address books 120
 - highlighting 30, 45, 49
 - inserting pauses in 58
 - saving 54–55
 - selecting 47, 48, 49

- phone off indicators 73
- Phone Off message 43, 299
- phone on indicators 73
- phone settings 64–72
- Phone Settings screen 67
- phone status icons 72
- Phone/Send button 22, 39
- phone-off icon 21, 43
- photo albums 170
- photos. *See* pictures
- pick lists. *See* drop-down lists
- piconets 299
- Picstel PDF Viewer. *See* PDF Viewer
- picture backgrounds 172, 245
- picture captions 138
- picture file types 137, 170
- picture formats 165
- picture resolution 166, 173, 293
- picture settings 168, 169
- picture speed-dial 57, 58
- pictures
 - accessing 163
 - cropping 173
 - deleting 173
 - downloading 151
 - editing 172
 - hiding on web pages 148
 - naming groups of 169
 - organizing 172
 - previewing 167
 - renaming 173
 - rotating 168, 173
 - saving changes to 173
 - sending 138, 171
 - storing 165, 169, 295
 - synchronizing 81, 163, 164
 - taking 165–166, 293
 - troubleshooting 293
 - viewing 170
- Pictures & Videos app 167, 170–173
- PIM software 274, 298, 299
- PIMs 299
- PINs 300
- Play softkey 176
- Play Sound option 66
- playback controls 59, 176, 180
- playback options 176, 179, 210
- Playback screen 179, 180
- playing
 - media files 175–177
 - multimedia messages 140
 - presentations 209, 210
 - ringtones 65
 - slide shows 168, 171
 - video clips 170, 174
 - voice notes 196
 - voicemail 51, 52, 59
- playlists 174, 175, 176, 178
- plug-ins 147, 246
- POP email accounts 102, 103–110
- pop-up menus 32
- portable radio. *See* radio
- Power icon 265
- Power screen 265
- power settings 265
- Power/End button 23, 43, 44
- PowerPoint files 199
- PowerPoint Mobile 209–210
- PowerPoint Mobile icon 209
- predefined passkeys 62, 63, 156
- preferences 243
- presentations 209, 210
 - See also* PowerPoint Mobile
- previewing
 - multimedia messages 139
 - pictures 167
 - ringtones 65

- sounds 248
- videos 167
- priority options 115, 193
- privacy mode 139
- privacy settings 71
- private events 190
- processor 311
- Program Files folder 239
- Programs screen 38
- programs. *See* applications;
software
- protecting
 - expansion card slot 236
 - information 256–260
 - spreadsheets 211
- proxy servers 268
- punctuation marks 35
- push technology 90

Q

- Quality command 167
- Quick Keys 46, 58
- Quick Tour 11
- Quick Tour icon 11
- QuickTime Player 174

R

- radio 306, 311

- radio frequency emissions 303, 308
- RAS connections 266
- Receiving Data message 235
- rechargeable battery. *See* battery
- recipients, sending to
 - multiple 115, 136
- Record button action option 197
- recording
 - sounds 247
 - videos 166–167, 169
 - voice captions 138
 - voice notes 195, 197, 255
- recording toolbar 195
- recurring appointments. *See* repeating appointments
- redialing phone 48
- redirector (websites) 292
- refreshing web pages 148, 292
- Regional Settings icon 249
- Regional Settings screen 249
- reminders
 - adding 187, 192, 193, 194
 - checking for 75
 - system alarms and 262
 - turning on and off 247

- remote access servers 266
- remote files 267
- Remove Programs icon 232
- Remove Programs screen 232
- removing device battery 18, 276
- renaming
 - documents 208
 - expansion cards 239
 - pictures or videos 173
 - workbooks 220
 - worksheets 218
- repeat media playback 176
- repeating appointments 188
- repeating sounds 66, 248
- repeating tasks 193
- replacing
 - battery 18, 276–277
 - information 220
 - text 205
- Request delivery
 - notifications option 142
- reset button 274
- resets 274–276, 279
- resizing
 - images 292
 - text 149, 248

- resolution (camera) 166, 167, 293
- resolution (screen) 279, 312
- Resolution command 166
- restarting device. *See* resets
- restoring
 - backups 276, 283
 - device settings 89
 - factory defaults 180
 - information 89, 275, 276
 - sound settings 246
- Resume playback option 179
- reverse type 30
- RF emissions 303, 308
- right-click menus. *See* shortcut menus
- Ring tone command 67
- ringer 50, 66
- Ringer switch 17, 50, 246
- ringtone files 137
- ringtone managers 294
- ringtones
 - assigning to caller IDs 66
 - assigning to contacts 66, 171, 184
 - creating video 171
 - downloading 64
 - previewing 65
 - selecting 65–66
 - sending 64, 138
 - roaming 70, 73, 94, 129, 287
- Roaming option 65
- rotating pictures 168, 173
- rows (spreadsheets) 216, 217
- Running Programs screen 39, 264
- S**
- safety statements 303
- Save as Template command 140
- Save password check box 92, 104, 107
- Save to Contact Ring Tone command 171
- Save to Contacts command 55
- Save to list 238
- Saved folder 115
- saving
 - documents 203, 204, 206, 209
 - email messages 115
 - files 237, 238
 - notes 197
 - passwords 104, 107
 - phone numbers 54–55
 - pictures or videos 165, 166, 169, 173
 - voice notes 255
 - workbooks 210, 212, 221
- Schedule command 93
- Schedule screen 93
- scheduled syncs 93–94, 287
- schedules. *See* calendar
- scheduling conflicts 186
- screen
 - activating items on 30
 - adjusting brightness 248
 - adjusting idle setting 44
 - aligning 250
 - caring for 15
 - changing color themes for 245, 250
 - conserving battery and 21
 - disabling touch-sensitivity for 256
 - fitting videos to 179
 - fitting web pages to 148
 - highlighting items on 28, 29–30, 53
 - locking 257
 - scrolling in 28–29, 256
 - selecting items on 28, 30
 - setting backgrounds for 172, 245

- troubleshooting 278, 279
- turning on or off 43, 44, 265
- viewing PDF files and 223
- viewing workbooks and 213
- waking up 44, 53
- screen fonts 249
- screen orientation 251
- screen resolution 279, 312
- screen specifications 312
- screens, returning to
 - previous 29
- screensavers 168
- scrolling
 - device screen 28–29, 256
 - spreadsheets 213
 - web pages 148, 149
- SD cards 236
- SDHC cards 236
- SDIO cards 236, 303, 304
- SDIO transmitters 304
- Search dialog box 227–228
- search features 227–228
- Search for list 228
- Search icon 227
- searching
 - company names 49
 - contacts 47, 184
 - documents 205
 - email messages 121
 - My Documents folder 227
 - online address books 120
 - web addresses 40
 - web pages 147
 - workbooks 220
- searching for signal 21
- secure sockets layer 300
- secure websites 147, 148, 153, 293
- secured networks 263
- security
 - browsing web and 147, 153
 - communicating with
 - Bluetooth devices and 156
 - connecting to computers and 263
 - creating passkeys and 63
 - protecting info and 256–260
 - sending email and 124, 127
 - security certificates 262, 263
 - self-portrait mirror 165, 167
 - sending
 - copyrighted items 171
 - email 115, 116, 121, 129, 131, 149
 - error reports 263
 - information 233
 - meeting requests 120, 188, 189, 192
 - multimedia messages 139
 - sounds 247
 - text messages 55, 135, 136
 - usage information 268
 - web links 149
- sensitivity settings 189, 193
- Sent folder 124
- servers, troubleshooting 288, 289, 291
- service plans 11
 - See also* accounts
- service providers 266, 290
- Set as Hands-Free command 282
- Set as Today Background command 172
- Set up show command 210
- settings. *See* options
- sharing information 233
- sheet list 213
- Shift key 35

- Short Messaging Service.
 - See SMS messaging
- shortcut menus 32
- Show alphabetical index
 - option 185
- Show contact names only
 - option 185
- Show half hour slots option 191
- Show list 237
- Show start and due dates
 - option 194
- Show Tasks entry bar option 194
- Show time as option 179
- Show week numbers option 191
- Shuffle command 176
- Side button 15, 197
- signal, searching for 21
- signal strength 73, 279
- signal-strength icon 43
- signatures 122–123
- Signatures screen 123
- silencing all sounds 50, 246
- silencing the ringer 50
- silent alarm 246, 248
- Simple PIN password type 45, 259
- sketching 195
- skins 180
- slide show options 168
- slide show toolbar 171
- slide shows 171, 209, 210
- slide timing option 210
- slider 29
- slides 138, 141, 171, 209, 210
- smartphone
 - activating 22
 - charging 19–20, 88
 - displaying space on 264
 - disposing of 307
 - freeing space on 232, 288, 295
 - getting help with 11, 38, 271
 - getting phone number for 23
 - getting started with 11, 31
 - inserting batteries and 18
 - locking 258–259
 - losing 89, 260
 - low light conditions and 34
 - moving around on 25
 - personalizing 243
 - resetting 274–276
 - setting up 13
 - storing 15, 16
 - turning on and off 305
 - unlocking 258
 - unpacking 9
- smartphone features 9, 15–17
- smartphone specs 311
- SMS messaging 135, 300
 - See text messages
- soft resets 274, 275
- softkeys 30
- software
 - See also applications
 - included with device 10, 312
 - installing bonus 230
 - installing sync 79, 84–86
 - purchasing 278
 - reinstalling sync 273
 - resetting device and 275
- songs. See music; playlists
- sort order 218
- sorting
 - folder items 229
 - History list items 152
 - information 218
 - messages 141
 - PDF files 222
 - pictures or videos 172

- tasks 194
- sound clips 137
- sound files 138, 247
- sound settings 66
- sounds
 - See also* specific types
 - customizing 246–248
 - previewing 248
 - recording 138, 247
 - repeating 66
 - restoring 246
 - sending 247
 - silencing all 50, 246
 - turning on or off 248
- Sounds & Notifications icon 61, 65
- Sounds & Notifications screen 61, 65, 247
- Sounds tab 247
- speaker 174
- speakerphone 53, 296, 306
- Speakerphone icon 53
- special characters. *See* alternate characters; symbols
- Speed Dial Options command 59
- speed-dial buttons
 - creating 57–59
 - deleting 59
 - dialing with 45–46
 - editing 59
 - selecting 40, 46
- spell-checking 115, 136, 207
- spreadsheet status bar 213
- spreadsheet templates 210, 212, 213, 221
- spreadsheet toolbars 213
- spreadsheets
 - See also* Excel Mobile; workbooks
 - adding charts 219
 - adding defined names 217
 - calculating in 214–215
 - entering info in 212, 215
 - filtering data in 218–219
 - formatting 211, 217
 - protecting 211
 - replacing info in 220
 - scrolling 213
 - sorting in 218
 - splitting 213
- SSL security protocol 300
- standby mode (camera) 167
- Start button 38
- Start menu 38, 251
- starting
 - data connections 268
 - Internet Explorer Mobile 147
 - Quick Tour 11
 - synchronization 80, 86, 89
- static 309
- stereo headphones 174
- stereo headsets 61
- Still image compression level 169
- still mode (camera) 165
- stopping media playback 176
- stopping synchronization 97
- Storage card option 151
- storage card symbol 229
- storage space 235, 264, 295
- storing
 - attachments 117, 125
 - documents 206
 - information 235, 295
 - smartphone 15, 16
 - workbooks 220
- streaming 177, 300
- Strong alphanumeric password type 45, 259
- stylus 27
- submenus 32
- support 11, 12
- symbols 35, 36, 214

- sync applications 80, 86, 87, 273
- sync cable 86, 87, 88, 89
- sync conflicts 92
- Sync feature 174
- sync icons 74
- sync methods 81
- sync options 79, 96–97
- sync settings (Exchange servers) 92
- Sync softkey 94
- sync software 10, 79, 81, 84, 286
- sync software window 86
- synchronization
 - conserving battery and 21
 - defined 300
 - downloading email and 115, 116
 - enabling wireless 80, 90, 94, 95
 - getting started with 24
 - initiating manual 94
 - initiating over Bluetooth devices 94–95
 - installing apps and 231
 - overview 77, 79, 282
 - resetting device and 275, 276
- scheduling 93–94, 287
- sending meeting requests and 189
- setting up PCs for 83–87, 96
- starting 80, 86, 89
- stopping 97
- transferring media files and 163–164, 174
- transferring Office files and 201–203
- troubleshooting 273, 274, 283–289, 290, 291
- upgrades and 10
- synchronizing
 - over Bluetooth connections 94
 - wirelessly 94
- system alarms 262
- system errors 279
- system locks 256, 258–259
- system requirements 83, 313
- system settings 260–266
- system sounds 50, 246–248
- system warnings 247
- T**
- tabs 28
- taking pictures 165–166, 293
- tapping 27, 30, 250, 279
- tapping sounds 247
- task categories 193, 194
- tasks
 - adding reminders to 193
 - completing 193
 - creating 192–193
 - customizing 194
 - deleting 194
 - displaying 194
 - filtering and sorting 194
 - marking as sensitive 193
 - setting due dates for 193
 - setting reminders for 194
 - synchronizing 81, 85
- Tasks application 192–194
- Tasks entry bar 193, 194
- Tasks icon 192
- Tasks list 194
- Tasks Over The Air (OTA) 90
- TDD devices 67, 71, 305
- technical support 11, 12
- telecommunications devices 305
- templates
 - documents 205, 209
 - messages 140
 - notes 196, 197

- spreadsheets 210, 212, 213, 221
- Templates folder 205, 212
- tentative appointments 187
- text
 - aligning 207
 - copying 151–152, 206
 - deleting 30, 47
 - entering 34, 35, 254, 255
 - finding and replacing 205
 - formatting 206
 - highlighting 30, 151, 207
 - indenting 207
 - moving 206
 - resizing 149, 248
 - selecting 151
 - spell-checking 115, 136, 207
 - word processing 203
- text captions 138
- text files 263
- text messages
 - checking for 73
 - creating 135–136
 - customizing 142
 - deleting 141
 - making calls and 49, 53
 - receiving 135, 139
 - replying to 139, 140
- sending 55, 135, 136
- sorting 141
- troubleshooting 281
- viewing 139, 140
- text phrases 115, 136, 139
- text speed-dial 57, 58
- text styles 207
- text telephone devices. *See* TTY/TDD devices
- text-entry fields. *See* entry fields
- THB car kit 61
- themes 245, 250
- third-party applications
 - 5-way navigator and 27
 - compatibility with 279
 - installing 229, 230, 294
 - losing information in 275
 - resetting device and 275
 - saving memory and 295
 - synchronizing with 81
 - troubleshooting 230, 278, 294–295
 - viewing pictures and 293
- third-party hands-free devices 61
- Thumbnails softkey 166, 167
- time 250, 260, 261
 - See also* clock
- Time limit for videos option 169
- time units 187
- time zones 260, 261
- timed slide shows 209
- timer (camera) 166
- tips 9
- Today icon 245
- Today screen
 - customizing 172, 245
 - dialing from 44–45, 48, 58
 - looking up contacts on 47
 - monitoring phone calls and 52, 53, 72
 - moving around on 53
 - opening 39
 - recovering 288
 - starting web searches from 147
 - viewing info on 39–40
 - viewing voicemail messages on 51
- Today Settings screen 245
- tones. *See* ringtones; sounds
- touchscreen. *See* screen touchscreens
- touchscreen lockout 256, 257
- touch-sensitive feature 256
- transactions 293

transition effects (slides) 210
transmission delays 281
transparency levels 172
troubleshooting 11, 271
trusted device list 154, 155
trusted devices 154, 155,
157
 See also partnerships
trusted pairs. *See*
 partnerships
TTY/TDD devices 67, 71, 305
TTY/TDD icon 73
Turn on Bluetooth option 62
Typing mode 197

U

UDP ports 179
unauthorized users 256, 257,
263
unavailable time slots 190
Unfreeze Panes option 213
Unknown Caller option 65
unlocking
 smartphone 258
 spreadsheet rows and
 columns 213
unretrieved voicemail 51
unsafe areas 305
untimed events 187

updating
 information 79
 media libraries 177
upgrades 10, 84
uppercase letters 35, 256
URLs 124, 177, 209
 See also web links
usage information 268
USB controllers 286
USB hubs 87, 285
USB ports 87, 285
USB sync cable 87
usernames 300

V

vCal attachments 291
vCard attachments 291
Verizon Wireless accounts.
 See accounts
Verizon Wireless downloads
 page 151
Verizon Wireless message
 43
Vibrate when... check boxes
 66, 248
vibrating alarm 246, 248
video albums 170
Video command 167
video files 137, 170, 287

video formats 166
video resolution 167, 293
video ringtones 164, 171
video settings 169, 179
videos
 accessing 163
 deleting 173
 downloading 174
 organizing 172
 playing 170, 174
 previewing 167
 recording 166–167, 169
 renaming 173
 sending 138, 171
 storing 166, 169, 295
 synchronizing 81, 163,
 164
 transferring to expansion
 cards 174
viewing
 alternate characters 36
 animated images 174
 application menus 31, 32
 appointments 186, 187
 calendar 186
 contact info 47, 185
 events 188, 190
 memory usage 264
 on-device help 11

- PDF files 203, 222, 223
 - pictures 170
 - running applications 264
 - space on device 264
 - space on expansion cards 264
 - speed-dial buttons 46
 - tasks 194
 - text messages 139, 140
 - voicemail messages 51
 - web favorites 150
 - web pages 147, 148
 - virtual private networks. *See* VPN connections
 - Vista operating systems. *See* Windows Vista computers
 - voice call icon 73
 - voice captions 138
 - Voice Command application 252
 - Voice Command icon 253
 - voice commands 21, 252–254, 278
 - Voice mail option 65
 - voice notes 195–196, 197, 255
 - voice privacy icon 74
 - Voice Privacy setting 71
 - voicemail
 - checking for 51, 72
 - retrieving 51–52
 - sending calls to 50, 55
 - setting up 51, 52
 - troubleshooting 67
 - voicemail buttons 59
 - Voicemail icon 51, 52
 - voicemail notifications 52
 - voicemail systems 51
 - volume
 - phone 50, 66
 - ringer 66
 - system sounds 247
 - Volume button 66
 - VP icon 74
 - VPN clients 267, 283
 - VPN connections 105, 118, 267, 285
 - VZAccess application 159
- W**
- waking up screen 44, 53
 - wallpaper 164
 - warnings 247, 275, 306–307
 - warranty 10
 - weak signals 279
 - web addresses 40, 147, 292
 - See also* web links
 - web browsers 147
 - See also* Internet Explorer Mobile
 - web browsing
 - getting started with 147, 148
 - overview 145
 - phone as modem feature and 159
 - secure sites and 147, 148, 153, 293
 - troubleshooting 292–293
 - wireless connections and 145
 - web favorites. *See* favorites
 - web files 153
 - web forms 149
 - web links
 - clearing 153, 295
 - highlighting 29
 - selecting 124, 149
 - sending 149
 - troubleshooting 292
 - web navigation features 27
 - web page properties 149
 - web pages
 - adding to favorites 149–150
 - arranging on screen 148

- copying from 151–152
- dialing from 49, 152
- downloading from 151, 231
- hiding images on 148
- moving around in 148
- opening 147, 149, 152, 292
- playing media files from 177
- refreshing 148, 292
- resizing images on 292
- resizing text on 149
- returning to recently viewed 152
- scrolling 148, 149
- searching 147
- selecting email addresses on 292
- sending email from 149
- setting as home 152
- synchronizing favorites for 81
- viewing 147, 148
- web-based email 102
- websites
 - See also* web browsing
 - accessing 145, 266
 - connecting to 147, 180
 - ending connections to 268
 - installing from 231
 - redirectors and 292
 - searching over 147
 - streaming from 177
 - transactions and 293
- Week View 186, 191
- Wi-Fi cards 303, 304
- Windows Media icon 175
- Windows Media Player. *See* Media Player
- Windows Mobile Device Center
 - defined 301
 - installing 85
 - opening 87
 - receiving email and 116
 - reinstalling 273
 - synchronizing with 80
 - troubleshooting 283–288
- Windows Mobile devices 234, 273
- Windows Mobile Getting Started CD 10, 84, 230
- Windows Mobile operating system 300
- Windows Mobile software 230, 231
- Windows Vista computers
 - enabling Bluetooth
 - connections for 95
 - installing to 85, 230
 - playing media files and 175
 - synchronizing with 80, 87, 89, 163, 202
 - transferring media files and 175
 - troubleshooting sync problems 284
 - Windows XP computers
 - enabling Bluetooth
 - connections for 94
 - enabling phone as modem and 160
 - installing to 84, 230
 - synchronizing with 10, 80, 86, 89, 91, 163, 201
 - transferring media files and 174
 - troubleshooting sync problems 284, 285
 - WinZip utility 229
 - wired car kit 61
 - wired headsets 60, 64
 - wireless accounts. *See* accounts

- wireless connections
 - browsing websites and 145, 158
 - synchronizing over 80, 90, 94, 95
 - troubleshooting 288–289
 - wireless coverage. *See* coverage areas
 - wireless features 20, 266, 294
 - Wireless Manager 21, 43, 266
 - Wireless Manager command 21
 - wireless modem 158
 - wireless phones 308, 309
 - wireless services 21, 43, 266
 - See also* accounts
 - Wireless Sync 110
 - Wireless Sync email accounts 110–113
 - Wireless Sync icon 111
 - wireless synchronization 94
 - wireless transmitters 304
 - Word Completion tab 255
 - Word files 199
 - See also* documents
 - word highlight feature 30
 - Word Mobile 28, 203–209
 - Word Mobile icon 204
 - word processing 203
 - word search options 205, 227, 228
 - workbook list 221
 - workbooks
 - See also* Excel Mobile; spreadsheets
 - adding worksheets 217
 - creating 212
 - deleting 221
 - hiding data in 217
 - inserting rows or columns in 215–217
 - moving around in 213, 214
 - naming cells 217
 - naming sheets 218
 - opening 213
 - removing elements in 221
 - renaming 220
 - reordering sheets 217
 - resizing columns or rows 218
 - saving 210, 212, 221
 - searching in 220
 - selecting sheets in 213
 - worksheet names 211, 217, 218
 - worksheets. *See* spreadsheets; workbooks
 - writing methods 255
 - Writing mode 197
- ## Y
- Year View 186
- ## Z
- ZIP files 229
 - zoom settings
 - camera 166
 - documents 204
 - PDF files 222
 - presentations 209
 - spreadsheets 211, 213

